



GCSE
History

GCSE History

Complete Revision & Practice



The Great Powers in Europe 1900

There were five main rival nations in Europe

- 1) **BRITAIN** ruled an Empire over one quarter of the world's people, and owned rich industries. Britain was an island — so it needed a strong navy to protect itself and its colonies from invasion.
- 2) **FRANCE** also had an overseas Empire. The French resented losing Alsace and Lorraine to Germany in the Franco-Prussian War in 1871.
- 3) **RUSSIA** was poor, but the biggest country in Europe — ruled by Tsar Nicholas II. It had no lands overseas, but wanted land in Europe and Asia with access to the sea.
- 4) **AUSTRIA-HUNGARY** was a Central European Empire, made up of 10 different nationalities — many of whom wanted independence. It was ruled by the Emperor Franz Joseph II.
- 5) **GERMANY** had a small Empire ruled by Kaiser Wilhelm II. He was jealous of Britain's superior sea power and rich colonies. He wanted to increase German influence and wealth abroad.

BRITAIN	200 warships 700,000 men
FRANCE	62 warships 1,000,000 men
RUSSIA	30 warships 1,200,000 men
AUSTRIA-HUNGARY	28 warships 800,000 men
GERMANY	100 warships 2,000,000 men

These powers were fairly evenly matched — the only way to get an advantage over your enemies was to make secret alliances against them.

Alliances were formed for security

- 1) 1879 — Dual Alliance between Germany and Austria-Hungary.
- 2) 1882 — Triple Alliance when Italy joined the Dual Alliance. This created a large grouping of allies in Central Europe — making both France and Russia nervous.
- 3) 1892 — Franco-Russian Alliance against the Triple Alliance.
- 4) 1904 — Entente Cordiale between Britain and France. The ententes were not military agreements — but they ended up involving the military because of the tensions between the two groups.
- 5) 1907 — Triple Entente between Russia, Britain and France.



Kaiser Wilhelm II

These alliances and ententes created more tension between the major powers. Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy felt threatened and surrounded by the Triple Entente. Russia was worried about Austria's intentions towards the Balkans. Meanwhile Britain and Germany competed to build the best navy in the world...

International politics — a sneaky business

Countries make alliances with nations who share their ideas, but it's also a way of ganging up on your enemies. Remember, this is all building up to the First World War — look for the long-term causes.

Tension Builds — 1900-1914

Europe was drifting towards a major war — and Germany and Britain played a big part.

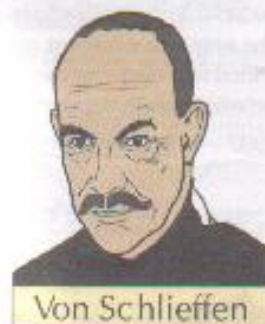
Germany and Britain began an arms race

- 1) The Kaiser wanted Germany to be a major world power but he needed a bigger navy.
- 2) Between 1900 and 1914 Germany built over 40 battleships and cruisers.
- 3) Britain had a policy called the Two Power Standard — the Royal Navy always had to be as big as the next two strongest navies in Europe put together. It meant Britain would never be outnumbered at sea.
- 4) Britain responded by building the first Dreadnought in 1906 — a new and superior kind of battleship.
- 5) Germany built its own version in 1907-8, but by 1911, Britain had a new, bigger kind.
- 6) By 1914 Britain had 29 Dreadnoughts and Germany had 17.



The major powers made plans for war

- 1) Germany came up with the Schlieffen Plan — to defeat France quickly before Russia mobilised, and then to fight Russia on her own (P.22).
- 2) France prepared Plan 17 to recapture Alsace and Lorraine from Germany.
- 3) Britain created an Expeditionary Force of 150,000 men, ready to travel immediately to Europe in case of war. The Territorial Army was also set up.
- 4) Russia and Austria started to mobilise their armies in 1909 in case of war.



Von Schlieffen

The belief there *would be* a war actually helped to make it happen

Because people thought there would be a war, governments increased military spending and trained more troops. Large armies made people think that if there was a war, their country would win. This meant that governments didn't worry as much about keeping the peace — war would end in victory.

Tension Builds — 1900-1914

There were **two crises over Morocco**

1) Moroccan Crisis 1905-6

- 1) Morocco was an uncolonised African country, but France wanted to add it to its Empire.
- 2) Germany objected — and demanded an international conference on Morocco's future.
- 3) At the Algeciras Conference in 1906, Germany was forced to back down by British, Italian, Russian and Spanish support for France taking control of Morocco's police and banks.

2) The Agadir Crisis 1911



- 1) The French sent troops to Fez to fight Moroccan rebels.
- 2) Germany accused France of trying to take complete control over Morocco.
- 3) Germany sent a warship called the Panther to Agadir, hoping to force France to give them the French Congo.
- 4) Britain objected to the German action because they had a naval base nearby at Gibraltar, and so they also sent warships to Agadir.
- 5) Germany backed down and recognised French influence in Morocco. The Germans felt increasingly anti-British.

Countdown to conflict — only a matter of time

There you go then, three major factors in the start of the First World War — the alliance system, the arms race, and the Moroccan crises — learn them. Once countries began making plans for war they were soon looking for any excuse to start a conflict — that's what the Moroccan crises were about.

Trouble in the Balkans

The **Balkans** were known as 'the powder-keg of Europe' — a spark of trouble could set off an explosion.

The Balkans were controlled by the Turkish Empire

- 1) The Balkans were a very **poor area** of Europe.
- 2) The Turkish Empire (also known as the Ottoman Empire) was **very weak** — the Sick Man of Europe.
- 3) Other European powers, especially Russia, wanted **influence** in the Balkans.
- 4) Many Balkan states, like Bulgaria and Crete wanted **independence** from the Ottoman Empire.



The Balkans 1912

Other powers were involved

- 1) **GERMANY** wanted to build a **railway** to the East through the Balkans.
- 2) **AUSTRIA-HUNGARY** wanted to **stop** Serbia from **stirring up** the **Slavic** people inside its own lands. The Slavs wanted **independence** and hoped Serbia (a Slavic country) would help them.
- 3) **RUSSIA** was also a Slavic country — but it really wanted **sea access** from the Black Sea to the Mediterranean, controlled by the Ottoman Empire.
- 4) **ITALY** wanted to **control** the other side of the Adriatic Sea. It took Tripoli in 1911.

In 1908 Austria seized Bosnia and Herzegovina

This was a **big mistake**. Many people living there were **Slavs**, who wanted to unite with **Serbia**. The Austrian invasion was **resented** by the Slavic peoples everywhere, including Russia.

Two wars created more tensions

1) The First Balkan War

Greece, Bulgaria, Serbia and Montenegro formed the **Balkan League** and **attacked** the Ottoman Empire in 1912. The Turks were **beaten** easily and were driven out of the Balkan area and forced to **give up** their lands there.

2) The Second Balkan War

In 1913 the Balkan League **quarrelled** — Bulgaria went to **war** with Greece and Serbia. Turkey and Romania **joined** the Greek and Serbian side and Bulgaria was soon **defeated** — losing land to the four victors.



The Balkans after the second Balkan war (note increased size of Serbia)

In both of these wars, the British tried to **keep the peace**, instead of supporting Russia on Serbia's side. German politicians saw this as a **sign** that the **Triple Entente** was **weak** — Britain wouldn't support Russia.

Make sure you understand the Balkans

This is one of the main causes of the First World War so make **sure you learn it**. The **Slav question** is the key — Serbia wanted to **unite** the Slavic peoples in the region, and **resented** the invasion of Bosnia.

The Outbreak of War

The tension suddenly exploded into World War I — and it began in the Balkans.

The Black Hand was a Serbian Nationalist Group

- 1) The Black Hand was started in Serbia with the aim of uniting all the Serbian peoples.
- 2) Austria had many Serbian citizens and feared a rebellion in its lands, especially in Bosnia.

In 1914 the Austrian heir officially visited Bosnia

Archduke Franz Ferdinand was the heir to the throne — he went to Bosnia to help strengthen the loyalty of the Bosnian people to Austria-Hungary. The Black Hand planned his assassination.



The Archduke was killed by a Serb student called Princip while he visited Sarajevo in June 1914. Princip was a Black Hand member so you can imagine how angrily Austria reacted.

Events moved quickly towards war

The sequence of events is important — remember the Triple Alliance and the Triple Entente because they determined how the two sides shaped up for World War I.

- | | |
|----------|--|
| 23 JULY | Austria-Hungary blames the Serbian government for the assassination, issuing a 10-point ultimatum. The ultimatum states that if Serbia doesn't give up its independence, Austria-Hungary will send troops into Serbia. |
| 28 JULY | Serbia refuses to let these troops in.
Austria-Hungary declares war on Serbia. |
| 29 JULY | Russia begins mobilising troops ready to help Serbia. |
| 30 JULY | Germany demands that Russia stop mobilising. |
| 1 AUGUST | Russia refuses. Germany declares war on Russia.
France begins mobilising to help Russia. |
| 3 AUGUST | Germany declares war on France and sends troops through Belgium to attack, following the Schlieffen Plan. |
| 4 AUGUST | Belgium is neutral, and Britain has agreed to protect Belgium.
Britain orders Germany to withdraw. Germany refuses.
Britain declares war on Germany. |
| 6 AUGUST | Austria-Hungary declares war on Russia. |



Now count the number of days in which all this happened — not much time for sensible thinking, and it wasn't exactly easy to contact people quickly in those days.

The First World War — everybody got sucked in

Remember, the Sarajevo assassination only triggered the war, it didn't cause it. Make sure you know how the alliance system worked — Russia helped Serbia, so Germany helped Austria, so France... etc.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Have a go at these easy warm-up questions, then go on and try the exam question which follows.

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List the three countries which made up the Triple Alliance. List the three countries in the Triple Entente.
- 2) What does it mean to say that Britain and Germany began an "arms race"?
- 3) Briefly describe what happened during the Agadir Crisis of 1911.
- 4) Why did Serbia resent the 1908 Austrian invasion of Bosnia?
- 5) What event in June 1914 triggered the First World War?
- 6) Briefly explain how the alliance system sucked all the major powers of Europe into war.



Source A: A map of Europe showing the major alliances in 1914.

Source B: Kaiser Wilhelm II.

I declared with all the emphasis at my command... that my heart is set upon peace, and that it is one of my dearest wishes to live on the best of terms with England. But, you will say, what of the German navy? Surely, that is a menace to England! My answer is clear. Germany is a young and growing empire ... Germany must have a powerful fleet to protect her trade and her many interests in even the most distant seas.

London Daily Telegraph, October 28, 1908

Source C: A speech given by the British Foreign Secretary, Sir Edward Grey.

The German view of their program is that it is made for their own needs, and has no reference to ours. ... but it is essential to us that we should keep a position of superiority as regards our navy. To have a strong navy would increase their prestige, their diplomatic influence, and their power of protecting their commerce. But if the German navy were superior to ours ... we should no longer count for anything among the nations of Europe.

British Parliamentary Debates, March 29, 1909

Source D: An interpretation of the origins of World War I.

In 1898, Germany began to build up its navy, although this could only alarm the world's most powerful maritime nation, Britain. Within ten years, Britain had concluded agreements, with her two major colonial rivals, France and Russia. In the summer of 1914 the Germans were prepared, at the very least, to run the risk of causing a large scale war. The crumbling Austro-Hungarian Empire decided, after the assassination (of Archduke Franz Ferdinand) on 28 June, to take action against Serbia, which was suspected of being behind the murder. The German government offered unconditional support to the Austrians, despite the risk of war with Russia. Germany saw this as a way of breaking up the Entente, for France and Britain might refuse to support Russia.

From *The Origins of World War One*, by Dr. Gary Sheffield

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What can you learn from **Source A** about the way Europe was divided into alliances in 1914?

(3 marks)

- (b) Compare **Sources B and C**.

How do Sources B and C differ in their opinions on why Germany was building a strong navy?

(6 marks)

- (c) Study **Sources B and D**.

How useful is **Source B** to a historian writing about the reasons for German naval expansion in the years leading up to World War I?

(6 marks)

- (d) Study **Source D** and use your own knowledge to answer the following question. Why was Austria determined to punish Serbia for the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand?

(10 marks)

- (e) Answer this question using your own knowledge.

Were German nationalist and militarist policies the most important reason for the outbreak of World War I?

(15 marks)

The Schlieffen Plan

The Germans had to fight France and Russia

- 1) France had been defeated by Germany in 1870-71 and wanted revenge. The French had a secret plan — Plan 17 — to take back Alsace and Lorraine — lands they had lost in 1871.
- 2) France had made a treaty with Russia in 1894. Germany therefore expected a French attack from the West if a war broke out between Germany and Russia.
- 3) Germany would therefore have to fight on two fronts at once.

The answer was the SCHLIEFFEN PLAN, thought up in 1905 (see P. 16).

The Schlieffen Plan

1. Attack France through Belgium, and beat France within 6 weeks.
2. Hope that Russia will not be ready.
3. Surround the French coast, and then use your armies to fight Russia.

THE SCHLIEFFEN PLAN aimed to attack and defeat France through Belgium before the Russians were ready, then turn back to fight the Russian Army.



The plan didn't work for three reasons...

- 1) Belgium refused to let the German army through to attack France, so Germany had to enter Belgium by force.
- 2) Britain had signed a treaty with Belgium in 1839 to protect it as a neutral country. When Germany refused to withdraw from Belgium, Britain declared war.
- 3) Russia was ready for war quicker than the Germans had expected. Many valuable German troops had to march East to face them instead of pushing on into France.

Trench warfare — neither army could win

The early battles of the war in the West saw the two sides struggle for an advantage:

MONS — August 1914, the British Expeditionary Force (BEF) — the first troops sent over from Britain — managed to slow down the German advance, but they didn't stop it. The German Kaiser called them a "contemptible little army".

MARNE — the Allied troops managed to save Paris, and forced the Germans to pull back to the river Aisne. The battle lasted five days.

YPRES — where both sides 'dashed to the sea' to stop the other side controlling the coastline.

*Neither side could push the other back, so they dug **TRENCHES** to stop the enemy advancing further. By the end of 1914, the **trench-lines** stretched all the way from the Belgian coast down to Switzerland and the two armies had reached a stalemate.*

The Schlieffen plan relied on speed — delays led to its failure

Belgian resistance and the intervention of the BEF slowed the German advance towards Paris. The Russians mobilised quickly, and the Germans had to divert troops to the East. The result was stalemate.

Stalemate in the West

There were several reasons why this war was different for the generals and the soldiers.

Changes in warfare meant stalemate in the trenches

- 1) Nobody was used to trench warfare and no-one could break the stalemate.
- 2) New weapons the armies had were better for defence than attack (see diagram).
- 3) Advancing troops couldn't hold on to the ground they won, and were pushed back.
- 4) Both sides were well supplied, and could always call up more arms and men.
- 5) Conditions were often appalling — muddy and wet — not suited for quick attacks.
- 6) Artillery bombardments were supposed to weaken enemy lines — but they just warned the enemy an attack was coming.

See p40 for more about the new weapons



The Generals kept sending troops 'over the top'

Both sides often tried to break the deadlock by sending thousands of men across No Man's Land. The result was huge slaughter of infantry. But some battles did affect the whole war:

- 1) At the 2nd Battle of Ypres 1915, the Germans used poison gas for the first time against the Allied troops.
- 2) At Verdun 1916, the French, under Marshal Petain, held the Germans back from the city.
- 3) This victory for France boosted French morale — Verdun became a symbol of French freedom and demoralised the Germans, who were sure it would fall.
- 4) In order to relieve the pressure on Verdun, the British began a major attack at the Somme (July-October 1916). At this battle the British army used a new invention — the tank.



The Somme was a major battle and a major disaster

The Somme was one of the key battles of the war. The British commander was Sir Douglas Haig. After a massive artillery bombardment, the British soldiers were sent 'over the top' to charge the German trenches. They were under orders to advance slowly, not run. This gave the Germans time to get ready for the attack. The slow-moving British soldiers were an easy target. 57,000 Britons were killed or wounded on the first day alone. The battle dragged on till November, but only gained about 15km of land in some places. (See page 42 for more on The Somme.)



Trench warfare — all quiet on the Western Front

Remember the most important thing about the main battles is their effect on the war. Scribble a paragraph on why trench warfare created a stalemate — it's the key to the War.

The Eastern Front

Unfortunately there wasn't just a Western Front... This was a world war, so you've got to know about the Eastern Front as well.

The Russian Army was supposed to be a steamroller

- 1) The Allied plan was for Britain and France to hold the German army up in the West, while the Russian army advanced from the East. This would trap the Germans between their enemies.
- 2) At the start of the war, British newspapers talked confidently about the Russian steamroller crushing opposition as it advanced into Germany. It didn't happen.

The Russians did catch the Germans out — they were ready in just 10 days with 6 million men. The Germans had to send troops East before they'd defeated France — so the Schlieffen Plan failed.

But the Russian Advance was a failure

- 1) The Army advanced into Germany, but they didn't have enough weapons. Many soldiers had to wait for someone to be killed so that they could get hold of a rifle.
- 2) The Russian plans were rushed because of the need to advance quickly. They weren't prepared for a long campaign.
- 3) The Army was poorly organised. Many officers were inexperienced and discipline was poor.
- 4) 200,000 Russians were slaughtered in 1914 at the battles of Tannenberg and the Masurian Lakes by German troops led by Hindenberg and Ludendorff.
- 5) After this the Russians were driven back, and the Germans and Austro-Hungarians advanced.
- 6) A stalemate soon developed on the Eastern Front. The war was now like a chess match. The war effort put a great strain on Russia, as civilians went hungry so the troops could be supplied.



The Russian steamroller — it was big but rusty

The Russian advance was a disaster, but not useless. Remember — because the Russians got ready for war quickly the Schlieffen Plan failed. Scribble a list of reasons why the advance was a disaster.

Fighting on all Fronts

The Eastern Front was much more than just Russia.

War around the world

- 1 When countries like Turkey and Bulgaria joined in, the War spread to new fronts.
- 2 The main fighting continued on the Western Front.
- 3 But all of these fronts were important. Successes on one front could boost the morale of a nation, whereas defeats could create discontent and anger.



This was a real world war — from East to West and back

- 1 **THE FAR EAST** — Japan had made a treaty with Britain in 1902, and now attacked some of Germany's colonies in the East.
- 2 **AFRICA** and the **PACIFIC** — There was fighting in the colonies of the other major powers.
- 3 The **BRITISH EMPIRE** — Soldiers came from all over, including Canada, India, and Australia.
- 4 **GREECE** (Salonika) — A new front opened because Serbia was under attack from Austria.
- 5 **ITALY** (River Isonzo) in 1915 — Italy had decided to help the Allies, and could attack Austria and Germany from the south, but didn't make much progress. The Italian forces were defeated at the battle of Caporetto in 1917, and forced to retreat.
- 6 **TURKEY** — See p 44 for details of the Gallipoli Campaign

Look at the map again and find some of these different areas of warfare — then learn them.

British forces achieved real success in the Middle East



- 1 **MESOPOTAMIA** was part of the Ottoman Empire. It was important to stop the Turks invading British-controlled Egypt, and attacking British oil supplies in Persia (modern Iran).
 - i) A British force was forced to surrender at Kut-el-Amara in April 1916.
 - ii) But more and more British troops were sent out, and gradually pushed the Turks out in 1917.
- 2 **ARABIA** — When the British captured Baghdad in March 1917, many Arabs revolted against the Turks. The British gave them weapons, and one officer, T.E. Lawrence — Lawrence of Arabia — became a hero, helping the Arabs to attack the important Hejaz Railway in 1917.
- 3 **PALESTINE** Allied forces beat the Turks at the Battle of Beersheba, and took Jerusalem in December 1917. In 1918, they finally took Damascus. They were led by Sir Edmund Allenby, a much more popular figure than Haig. By October 1918, British forces controlled the area.

Remember — they don't call it a World War for nothing

It's really important that you know how the War spread around the world.

Scribble a paragraph on how fronts opened up in Italy, Greece, and Arabia amongst others.

The End of the Fighting

Russia didn't have much success after 1916 but the USA joined the Allies.

Russia pulled out of the War in 1917

- 1) Tsar Nicholas II was a poor military commander — but he had taken control of the Russian war effort. The results were disastrous.
- 2) To the south, the Brusilov Offensive advanced successfully into Austria-Hungary in June 1916, but the troops were soon pushed back.
- 3) There was widespread starvation in the winter of 1916, and Nicholas II was forced out of power in 1917. The new Provisional Government continued the war, but was no more successful (see P. 127).
- 4) The Bolshevik Revolution in 1917 brought new leaders to power who decided to end the fighting. Russia signed the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk with Germany in 1918, giving Germany control of a large amount of Eastern territory in return for peace (see P. 132).
- 5) Two important results of Russia leaving the war were:
 - i) The Allies were left to fight on without Russian help on an Eastern Front.
 - ii) Germany was now able to pull back 1 million men to the Western Front.



In April 1917 the USA joined the Allies

- 1) In April 1917 the USA joined the war for two main reasons — the effects of German U-Boat activity, and a German attempt to encourage Mexico to attack the USA. This was a direct threat.
- 2) By now the fighting in Europe had become even fiercer. The French under General Nivelle had failed to push the Germans back.
- 3) The Allies fought the battles of Passchendaele and Cambrai in 1917. (The Battle of Passchendaele was also known as the Third Battle of Ypres — 400,000 Allied troops were killed or wounded to win a few hundred metres of mud.)



Germany had to attack before all the Americans arrived



- 1) The USA wasn't ready to send all its troops, so Germany made a last effort to break through.
- 2) The Ludendorff Offensive tried to capture Paris in March of 1918.
- 3) It looked like it would work at first — but the Germans advanced too far too fast, and their supplies had not kept up with them.
- 4) They were beyond their lines in a kind of bulge, so the Allies attacked them from the flanks (sides).
- 5) Thousands of American troops were soon joining the Allies, and the Germans were pushed back.
- 6) The German Kaiser, Wilhelm II abdicated and the new government agreed a cease-fire or armistice on November 11th 1918.

America made all the difference

Here you go, three key events in the last two years of War — Russia's withdrawal, the USA joining the struggle and Germany trying a final big offensive. It's important that you learn them.

The War to End all Wars

Four years can make a big difference. Over 1 million people had rushed to fight in 1914.

1914 — "It'll be over by Christmas"

- 1 Nobody expected the horrors of trench warfare.
- 2 People believed at first that war could be an exciting adventure.
- 3 Recruiting posters made people feel they had a duty to join.
- 4 Men who didn't join were often shamed by others, and given white feathers as a mark of cowardice.
- 5 Government propaganda gave people a rosy picture of the War, and a picture of the cruelty of the enemy (see below).
- 6 Government censorship prevented people getting the real news from the Front.



1918 — "The War to end all Wars"



By 1918 most people believed there would never be another war like it again. So people's attitudes had changed a lot since 1914. They didn't see war as a big adventure any more.

Reasons for the change in public opinion

- 1 German Zeppelins and planes had bombed civilians in Britain, making the war more real.
- 2 Casualties seemed to be mounting, and the war began to drag on without success.
- 3 People felt that many Army and Navy chiefs were incompetent and unable to win the war.
- 4 Growing shortages of food and supplies in Britain led to hardship for the people.
- 5 War poets were writing about the reality of conditions in the trenches.
- 6 A film of the Somme in 1916 showed people some of the shocking truth about the real war.
- 7 The war was very expensive, costing about £7 million per day — so taxes went up.
- 8 Large numbers of soldiers were coming home crippled and blinded.



At last — the War was finally over

There had never been a war with so many countries involved and so many casualties. For the next two decades the most important political issue in the world would be trying to avoid another war like it...

Revision Summary

Time for some lovely revision questions to see how much you remember. These aren't the sort of questions you'll get in your Exams — you're unlikely to get an exam question purely on the course of the war. These are here to check you've understood every last bit of this section. Sometimes they ask for facts, but other times they want your opinions. It's really important you give both sides of an argument — that's the only way to get top marks in your Exams. When you've finished the questions check the answers you weren't sure about. Then have another go...

- 1) Which of the Great Powers had the biggest Empire in the world in 1900?
- 2) Which two bits of land had France lost to Germany in 1871?
- 3) Who were the rulers of Russia and Germany at the time?
- 4) Which of the major powers had (1) the largest navy? (2) the largest army?
- 5) List the key alliances between 1882 and 1907 which split the major powers into two opposing camps.
- 6) Name the two new forces started by Britain as part of her preparations for war.
- 7) Write a paragraph on the Agadir Crisis of 1911.
- 8) Give the reasons why Germany, Austria, Russia, and Italy all wanted influence in the Balkans at this time.
- 9) Which Balkan states started the Balkan League? When?
- 10) What was the First Balkan War about? When did it happen?
- 11) What happened in the Second Balkan War? How did this leave Serbia?
- 12) Who was the heir to the Austria-Hungarian throne? Where was he visiting in June 1914?
- 13) Why was Princip's nationality so important?
- 14) What did Austria demand from Serbia after the assassination?
- 15) What did Russia do when Serbia asked for help?
- 16) What was Germany's reaction to Russia's action?
- 17) Why did Britain decide to declare war on Germany?
- 18) Write down at least four reasons for the outbreak of World War I.
- 19) Here's a list of important battles — put them into chronological order.
Next to each, note what was important about each one —
MARNE, FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES, THE SOMME, MONS, 2ND BATTLE OF YPRES,
PASSCHENDAELE, VERDUN, TANNENBERG, CAPORETTO, CAMBRAI.
- 20) Give at least four reasons why the Russian offensive failed in 1914.
- 21) List three reasons why the Schlieffen Plan didn't work.
- 22) How far did the trenches stretch by the end of 1914?
Give 6 reasons why trench warfare lasted so long.
- 23) What successes did the Allies have in Palestine in 1917-18?
- 24) The Bolshevik leaders of Russia signed a treaty with Germany in 1918.
What was this treaty called?
- 25) Name the Russian Tsar who was forced out of power in 1917.
- 26) Give two reasons why USA joined the War in 1917.
- 27) Why didn't people at home know about the terrible conditions on the Western Front?
- 28) Give as many reasons as you can why people's attitudes to the War had changed so much in Britain by 1918.

The Need for Reform

In 1900 many people in Britain weren't just a bit poor, they were desperate. There was no Government help for the old, ill or unemployed. At the same time, a great debate was going on about whether the Government had a duty to help these people, or a duty not to interfere in their lives.

Poor people faced serious hardship in 1900

- 1 The only help available for very poor people was workhouses run by local councils. In the workhouses people worked long hours in brutal conditions for basic food and lodging. Many people saw going to the workhouse as the end of all self-respect and preferred to starve.
- 2 There was serious unemployment in some industries, and no 'dole' or unemployment benefit. If you were out of work you had to get by on nothing at all, or go into the workhouse.
- 3 Old people who had no savings or family to help them suffered very badly — there were no government pensions. The only option for many old people was the workhouse.
- 4 Housing in poor areas was damp, cold and didn't have proper sewage systems. It was easy to get ill in these conditions, and illness meant missing work, and maybe losing your job.
- 5 Many people couldn't afford doctors or medicine.
- 6 Many children had to go out to work from an early age, and so missed out on getting an education.
- 7 Large numbers of people couldn't even afford to eat properly. Out of all the men recruited to fight in the Boer War (1899-1902), half were malnourished.

Two reports said a third of British people were poor

- 1 Not everybody believed that poverty was all that bad — especially not rich people.
- 2 Then two reports said that poverty was serious, and that it affected large numbers of people.
- 3 Seebohm Rowntree had a factory in York. He didn't believe there were serious problems, so he did a survey of living conditions. He found that 28% of people in York were so poor that they couldn't afford basic food and housing. The report of the survey, called "Poverty, a study of town life" was published in 1901.
- 4 Charles Booth published "Life and Labour of the People in London" in 1903. This showed that 30% of people in London were living in severe poverty. Booth's report also showed that it was sometimes impossible for people to find work, however hard they tried. He also showed that wages for some jobs were so low that they weren't enough to support a family.

Public opinion on helping poor people began to change

- 1 There was no way you could put a third of the population into the workhouse. Britain needed a new approach to dealing with poverty. Plenty of people had an opinion on how it should be done.
- 2 Popular and well-respected writers like George Bernard Shaw, J.Galsworthy and H.G.Wells described how poor people lived in their books. They said the poor members of society needed help, and the Government should pass laws to make sure it happened.
- 3 People involved in public health and medicine said the Government should get more involved in health issues.
- 4 Socialists argued that wealth should be more equally spread between working people, and people like factory owners and land owners, who were traditionally the richest.
- 5 The Labour Party was the only main political party that was enthusiastic about socialist ideas. They argued that the Government should give financial help to the poorest members of society. Labour was attracting more and more working-class supporters.

Booth and Rowntree are names to remember

Learn to take in here. Learn the examples of the problems facing poor people, the two reports, and the new ideas on helping the poor. Scribble them down, and check you've got them right.

Conservatives, Liberals and Labour

Pressure was growing for the Government to deal with poverty. The main parties — the Liberals and the Conservatives — traditionally felt that it wasn't the Government's role. But things were changing.

The political parties had very different attitudes to poverty

The oldest, most powerful political parties — the Liberals and the Conservatives — didn't really agree with giving government help to people. They believed that:



- 1) the Government should interfere as little as possible in people's lives,
- 2) people should be free to decide how to spend their money, so it was wrong to raise taxes,
- 3) giving poor people money was morally wrong as it undermined their independence.



The Labour Party didn't have many MPs before 1906, but they did have growing support from working people. They believed that:

- 1) the poorest people in society should get Government help.
- 2) the Government should get the cash to pay for this from taxes.
- 3) the Government should also take over (nationalise) the major industries and make use of the profits.

Some Liberals, and some Conservatives were more open to the idea of the Government helping the poor — especially if it helped their party win votes from Labour.

A Royal Commission investigated poverty

In 1905 the Conservative Government set up a Royal Commission to look at the Poor Law. This was a nineteenth century law which had set up the workhouses and other help for the poor. The Commission was supposed to decide whether the help given by the Poor Law was good enough. But the members of the Commission couldn't agree about what caused poverty so they published two reports:

The Majority Report

(what the majority of the commission thought)

- If people were poor it was their own fault.
- They made themselves poor by gambling and drinking, so they didn't deserve help.
- Enough was being done for the poor already.

The Minority Report

(what the minority of the commission thought)

- People couldn't help being poor.
- Illness, old age, and a shortage of jobs made people poor.
- They thought more should be done to prevent people being poor.

Poverty suddenly became a major issue

We're used to the idea of benefits and pensions being paid by the Government but at the time this was a new idea. Scribble down the attitude of each party to poverty.

Laws to Help Children

After 1906 the Liberals brought in social reforms

- 1) In 1906 the Liberal Party won a landslide general election victory over the Conservatives.
- 2) At the same election 29 Labour Party MPs were elected to the House of Commons. They were now in a good position to push for help for the poor.
- 3) The Minority Report, combined with pressure from the general public, and the pressure from the Labour Party encouraged the Liberals to bring laws in that would deal with poverty.
- 4) The Liberals also wanted to compete with the Labour Party. They were worried about losing support from working-class voters. They felt new policies would appeal directly to the people.
- 5) The poor physical condition of working-class volunteers for the Boer War had shocked many. If Britain were involved in a major war, it would need a healthy working class to fight as soldiers.
- 6) David Lloyd George and Winston Churchill* were the MPs who worked hardest to drive the bills through. They wanted to help the poor, but they were also keen to make a name for themselves.

* Watch out for Churchill — he was a Liberal until the 1920s when he became a Conservative.

The Liberals didn't plan to help everyone — just the people with the worst problems. They were: children from poor families, old people, ill people, and people who were out of work or badly paid. Unfortunately they've left you reams of laws to learn...

Children needed special protection

- 1) **1906** the **School Meals Act** allowed LEAs to supply free school meals paid for out of rates.

LEAs = Local Education Authorities.
They were in charge of running state schools.
rates = local council tax

- 2) **1907** LEAs started giving children at their schools free medical inspections. Many of them built clinics where they could hold the inspections.

- 3) **1908** Parliament passed the **Children's Charter** to give children some legal protection. The Charter made it illegal for children younger than 16 to buy cigarettes, go into a pub or beg.



Herbert Samuel, a minister at the Home Office, tried to help young offenders:

- 1) He set up **Borstals** — special prisons for young offenders so they wouldn't have to go to adult prisons.
- 2) He set up the **probation service** to try to keep young people from reoffending.

The Liberals took the lead in social reform

The Liberals were the first to really act on the newly recognised problems of poverty, but they weren't necessarily just being charitable. Scribble down all the reasons why the Liberals brought in reform.

Laws to Help Old People

Old people got state pensions

In 1908, David Lloyd George was Chancellor of the Exchequer. He introduced the Old Age Pensions Act. These are the most important bits of the Act.

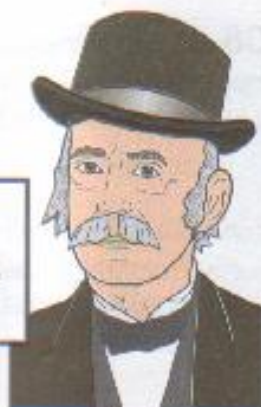
- 1) The pension was for people over 70 on low incomes.
- 2) The scheme was non-contributory — you didn't have to pay money in to get a pension when you retired. The pensions were paid for by money raised through ordinary taxes.
- 3) In the 1908 budget £1 200 000 of tax money was set aside to pay for pensions.
- 4) Single people with an income of less than £21 per year got 5 shillings per week.
Married couples with an income of less than £21 per year got 7s 6d (7 shillings & 6 pence) per week.
- 5) Anyone whose income was between £21 and £31 per year got a smaller pension.
- 6) People with an income of over £31 per year didn't get a pension at all.
- 7) The first pensions ever were paid on 1st January 1909.

Although Labour said 5 shillings was too little, the pension was immensely popular. Lloyd George took the credit.

Remember the aim wasn't to help everyone, just the poorest people.

"We are lifting the shadow of the workhouse from the homes of the poor."

DAVID LLOYD GEORGE



The Old Age Pensions Act — an over-70s free for all

The main point on this page is that people over 70 got pensions. Make sure you've memorised the date of the Act (1908) and know the main limitations.

Laws for the Protection of Working People

The Liberals also passed laws to help working people. Get all of these clear in your mind now — they may be boring, but you need to know the name and date of each Act, and what it did to help people.

People injured at work got compensation

The **Workmen's Compensation Act** was brought in in **1906**.

Under the new law employers had to pay workers compensation for injuries and diseases — if they had got them as a result of their work.

The act covered 6 million workers who hadn't previously had any legal protection.

The National Insurance Act of 1911

In **1911** Lloyd George introduced the **National Insurance Act**.

Lloyd George got a lot of the ideas for this Act from a similar scheme running in Germany.

The Act came in two parts. Part One's covered here. Part Two's covered on the next page.

Part One helped with health insurance

Part One was to help workers pay for health insurance. The insurance was to pay for treatment and sick pay when people were too ill to work. The National Insurance Act said the Government would top up the money that workers paid into insurance schemes.

- 1 The Act covered workers earning less than £160 per year.
- 2 Each week workers paid 4 old pence out of their wages into a central fund. Employers added 3 old pence per week and the Government added another 2 old pence per week.
- 3 Sick pay of 10 shillings per week was paid to male workers if they were off work ill for more than four days. This sick pay would be paid for 13 weeks. The worker was also entitled to medical attention.
- 4 Women didn't pay as much in or get as much out, because they didn't earn as much in the first place.
- 5 Women were paid 7s 6d a week sick pay. They also got a one-off maternity grant of 30 shillings.
- 6 Names of workers on the National Insurance scheme were put on a special list known as a doctors' 'panel'. Doctors were paid a sum by the Government for every patient on the panel.
- 7 The scheme was organised through organisations approved by the Government — friendly societies, trade unions and private insurance companies.
- 8 The scheme caused controversy — Conservatives said the Government had no right to force people to contribute from their wages, and many socialists said there should be higher taxes on rich people to pay for it instead of workers having to contribute. But it was still passed.



"Workers are getting nine pence for four pence"

DAVID LLOYD GEORGE

friendly society = a kind of insurance company

TEN MILLION WORKERS
now had health insurance.

You have to learn the details

There are lots of nasty little details here. I'm afraid you really have to learn them all. If you get a question about how useful or effective the act was, these facts will be your ammunition. Don't get caught short.

Laws for the Protection of Working People

Here's Part Two of the National Insurance Act, and a couple of other Liberal laws to help workers.

Part Two set up unemployment benefit for a few trades

- 1) Part Two of the National Insurance Act provided unemployment benefit for workers in shipbuilding, iron founding and construction. These were industries where workers were quite regularly out of work for several weeks at a time.
- 2) It was a contributory scheme. Employers, employees and the Government each paid 2½d per week into an unemployment fund.
- 3) In return workers were paid 7 shillings per week for up to fifteen weeks in any one year if they were unemployed. Payment started from the second week of unemployment.

The Trade Board Act of 1909 set a minimum wage

Winston Churchill and William Beveridge put together the Trade Board Act in 1909 to help sweated industry workers. Sweated industries included tailoring, lace-making and cardboard-box making. The workers were often women or foreign immigrants who worked from home doing long hours for low wages.

- 1) The Act set up trade boards for each of the 'sweated industries'.
- 2) Every board was made up of equal numbers of workers and employers, and a neutral chairman.
- 3) The board's job was to decide a minimum wage for the industry.
- 4) Employers paying less than their trade board laid down could be fined.
- 5) Factory inspectors made sure the Act was put into practice.

By 1914, two million workers were covered by the trade boards and so had the security of a minimum wage.

The Labour Exchange Act set up job centres

Churchill and Beveridge also worked together on the Labour Exchanges Act. This was passed in 1909 too.

- 1) Labour exchanges were like job centres. Unemployed workers could go there to find out about job vacancies.
- 2) Within five years there was a network right across Britain.
- 3) One million jobs a year were filled through the exchanges.

The Labour Exchange Act found people a million jobs a year

There's a lot of nasty fiddly detail here. The easiest way to learn the important bits is by making a timeline of acts and dates. Then make sure you can write down the main point of each act.

Effects of the Liberal Reforms

The Liberals' reforms wouldn't do much good if they couldn't pay for them. They had to get the money through taxes — one reason why some people didn't welcome the reforms with open arms.

Lloyd George wanted to raise taxes to pay for the reforms

In 1909 the Liberal Chancellor of the Exchequer Lloyd George decided he would have to raise taxes to pay for the Reforms. He proposed the tax increases in the 1909 budget. The budget was designed to tax the rich more heavily than the poor — so it became known as the People's Budget.

- Income tax would go up from 5 pence to 6 pence in the pound
- There'd be a new super tax of 2½ pence in the pound on incomes over £3000 per year
- The inheritance tax — called death duties — would go up
- Tax on tobacco and spirits would go up

The Liberals had to call a General Election in 1910

To become law the Budget had to be passed by the House of Commons and the House of Lords.

- 1 Although the Conservatives were bitterly opposed to the Budget, the Liberals got the bill through the Commons. But it was rejected in the House of Lords where Conservatives held the majority.
- 2 The Liberals couldn't see any way of getting the bill through Parliament. This was a constitutional crisis — the unelected House of Lords was blocking the will of the elected House of Commons.
- 3 The Liberals called a General Election to make sure they had the British people's support. The only issue of the campaign was the People's Budget.
- 4 The Liberal Party won the election. They reintroduced the Budget and finally it was passed by the Commons and the Lords.



The lords said 'no' to the People's Budget

To prevent such crises the Parliament Act was passed in 1911. The Lords were no longer allowed to reject bills on financial issues. They could reject other bills twice — but the third time they'd automatically become law.

The Liberal Reforms left some problems unsolved...

- 1 Hardly any of the new schemes were designed to help the whole population — just some people.
- 2 The National Insurance Act Part One didn't cover the worker's family. Part Two only covered a few industries.
- 3 The reforms didn't replace the old Poor Law. There were still workhouses — but fewer people in them.

...but changed attitudes to helping the poor

- 1 This was the first time that national taxes had been used to help the poor.
- 2 The State took on responsibility for protecting citizens from extreme hardship in sickness, old age and unemployment for the first time.
- 3 The schemes were introduced all across the country — they weren't just local affairs.
- 4 Large numbers of people were covered by some of the schemes — the National Insurance Act Part One covered 10 million workers.
- 5 There was massive opposition to some of the schemes, but social reform had become a reality.

The Liberal Reforms really shook things up

The fact that the Liberals had to call a General Election and change the law about the House of Lords shows what a stir they'd caused. The way they changed attitudes is really important too.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Now try these warm-up questions, and the exam question that follows. Spend about an hour on them.

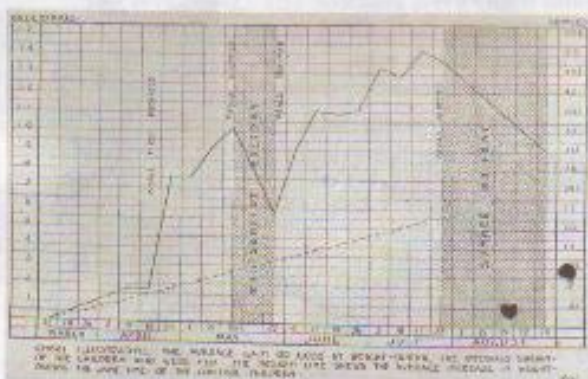
Warm-up Questions

- 1) Name the two reports which proved that many British people were living in poverty.
- 2) Why did the Liberal government introduce social reforms after the 1906 General Election?
- 3) a) Make a list of the names and dates of the laws passed to introduce social reforms 1906-11.
b) Next to the name of each law write down the change(s) it brought about, and the social group which benefited.
- 4) How did Lloyd George intend to pay for the social reform programme?

Source A: The effect of poverty on schooling.

In the slum schools 66 per cent of the children were unable to keep up with their school work. The cause of this was want of food. The children went to school without a proper meal in the morning. Another cause was the poor quality of the housing. Besides these causes were the poor and dirty clothes, want of sleep and drunkenness among the parents. Other causes were overwork, some children had to take out milk and cross the river walking one or two miles before school.

From a meeting of officials looking into the health of children in London schools, 1903



Source B: The effects of school meals.

From a report by the City of Bradford Medical Officer, 1907.

It shows the average gain or loss of weight in a group of Bradford school children from March to August 1907.

The shaded areas indicate school holidays. Meals were first provided in the third week of April.

Source C: A photograph of Lloyd George meeting some old age pensioners, 1910.



Source D: A view of Old Age Pensions.

When, twenty years later, the Old Age Pensions began, life was transformed for such aged cottagers. They were relieved of anxiety. They were suddenly rich. Independent for life! At first when they went to the Post Office to draw it, tears of gratitude would run down the cheeks of some, and they would say as they picked up their money, 'God bless that Lord George! (for they could not believe one so powerful and generous could be a plain 'Mr.') and God bless you, miss!' and there were flowers from their gardens and apples from their trees for the girl who merely handed them the money.

From *Lark Rise to Candelford*, a novel by Flora Thompson, first published in 1939

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What reasons are given in **Source A** to explain why London school children were unable to keep up with their school work?

(4 marks)

- (b) What can we learn from **Source B** about the impact of the School Meals Act of 1906?

(6 marks)

- (c) Study **Sources C and D** and use **your own knowledge** to answer the question below. Suggest why the people pictured in **Source C** are happy to meet Lloyd George.

(6 marks)

- (d) Study **Source D**.

What problems are there for an historian in using **Source D** as evidence about the popularity of the old age pension?

(8 marks)

- (e) Answer this question using **your own knowledge**.

Why did the Liberal governments of 1906-1914 introduce a programme of social reform, and what were the consequences of this policy?

(15 marks)

Revision Summary

Parliamentary Acts are really hard work to learn. When you've had a go at revising each page try answering these questions to see how well you've remembered the facts. If you can't answer them all without sneaking a look back through the section you need to learn the facts again — and again, till you get them all right every time.

- 1) In 1900 where did old people go when they fell into poverty?
a) Workhouse b) Jailhouse c) Schoolhouse
- 2) Who ran the workhouses?
- 3) What are the names of the two men who published reports on poverty in 1901 and 1903?
- 4) Name three groups of people who thought the Government ought to do more to help the poor.
- 5) What did most Conservatives think about giving Government help to poor people in 1900? Which other political party agreed with the Conservatives?
- 6) Which government set up a Royal Commission to look at the Poor Law? What year was it?
- 7) How many reports did they write? What were they called?
*a) The Liberal and Conservative Reports b) The Majority and Minority Reports
c) The Little and Large Reports*
- 8) Who won the General Election in 1906?
- 9) What does LEA stand for?
- 10) Name three things children under 16 weren't allowed to do after the Children's Charter in 1908.
- 11) What two new ideas did Herbert Samuel come up with to help young offenders?
- 12) What was David Lloyd George's job when he introduced the Old Age Pensions Act of 1908?
- 13) What did the Workmen's Compensation Act of 1906 say? How many workers did it cover?
- 14) How many parts has the National Insurance Act (1911) got?
- 15) What was Part One of the National Insurance Act about?
- 16) It's 1912. A worker in a cotton mill has got pneumonia. She earns £90 a year.
How much sick pay is she entitled to?
- 17) It's still 1912. Bill the miner has been sacked. Will he get unemployment benefit?
- 18) What's a sweated industry?
- 19) Which two acts did Winston Churchill and William Beveridge work together on?
- 20) How many people were entitled to a minimum wage by 1914?
- 21) What was the popular name for Lloyd George's 1909 budget?
- 22) Who stopped the budget from becoming law first time around?
- 23) What was the name and date of the act the Liberals brought in to stop this happening again?
- 24) Give two reasons why these reforms changed attitudes to helping the poor.

The British Expeditionary Force

BEF stands for British Expeditionary Force. For Britain the First World War began with the BEF going over to Europe to fight the Germans. Many British people were keen to join up and fight in the war. Nobody imagined it was going to last four years, or take the lives of 3 million Allied soldiers.

Britain declared war on Germany on 4 August 1914

See p 19 for more on the outbreak of the War

1. Britain was allied to France and Russia by an agreement called the Triple Entente.
2. Germany was allied to the Austro-Hungarian Empire and Italy by an agreement called the Triple Alliance.
3. The Austro-Hungarian Archduke Ferdinand was assassinated by Serbs, in the Bosnian capital Sarajevo on 28 June. Austria-Hungary declared war on Serbia. Russia agreed to help Serbia. Germany declared war on Russia, then on Russia's ally France.
4. Germany already had a strategy for invading France — it was called the Schlieffen Plan.
5. The plan was to push down through Belgium and then capture Paris. According to the Schlieffen Plan the Germans should be able to take control of France within weeks.
6. But Belgium was a neutral country — Britain stepped in to help them and declared war on 4 August.

Britain sent the BEF to help France and Belgium

1. The BEF was made up of 4 divisions of troops. The French Army in the field had 70 divisions.
 2. The BEF commander was Sir John French.
 3. The British and French aim was to stop the Germans from invading or capturing France.
 4. The BEF and the French didn't manage to stop the Germans in Belgium, or to stop them invading France.
 5. But once the Germans were in France, the BEF and the French fought three major battles at Ypres (it's pronounced a bit like EEP-r), Mons, and the river Marne, which brought the Germans to a standstill.
- The German First Army met British forces at Mons on 23 August 1914. The Germans were surprised because they didn't expect to see British soldiers. The small British force beat them back — but it wasn't a lasting victory as the French army retreated and the British had to follow.

The Germans needed to cross the Marne to get to Paris. In September 1914, the French managed to beat them back as far as another river called the Aisne. They were supported by the BEF. The German army dug trenches to defend their position. It became clear that the war was going to last longer than a few weeks.

Another German force was coming down through Belgium. They had already captured Antwerp, and were advancing on Paris. The BEF was sent North to defend Ypres. They fought right through October and November 1914, and managed to hang on to it, but there were terrible casualties. Half the BEF was wounded and 10% killed.



After Ypres the British Army needed more men

1. Kitchener, the Secretary for War, wanted to introduce conscription but Asquith, the Prime Minister, refused.
2. Instead of conscription there was a massive poster campaign — the "Your Country Needs You" one.
3. By September 1914 there were half a million volunteers. Another half million men joined by February 1915.

The ultimate lottery — your country needs you

Get the order of events in 1914 clear. Remember — the BEF went to help Belgium and France. Write down what happened at Mons, Marne and Ypres from August to November 1914. Learn it.

Trench Warfare

The examiners will want to be really sure you understand what trench warfare is — learn this now...

Trench warfare created deadlock

- 1) The Generals in charge, including Sir John French, weren't used to this type of fighting. They knew more about the type of battles where everyone met up on a big field, then the cavalry charged in, followed by footsoldiers and backed up with artillery.
- 2) After Ypres and the Marne, neither side could drive the other back. Both armies dug trenches. By the end of 1914 the trenches stretched from the Alps to the North Sea. This line of trenches was called the Western Front.
- 3) The trenches were easy to defend...

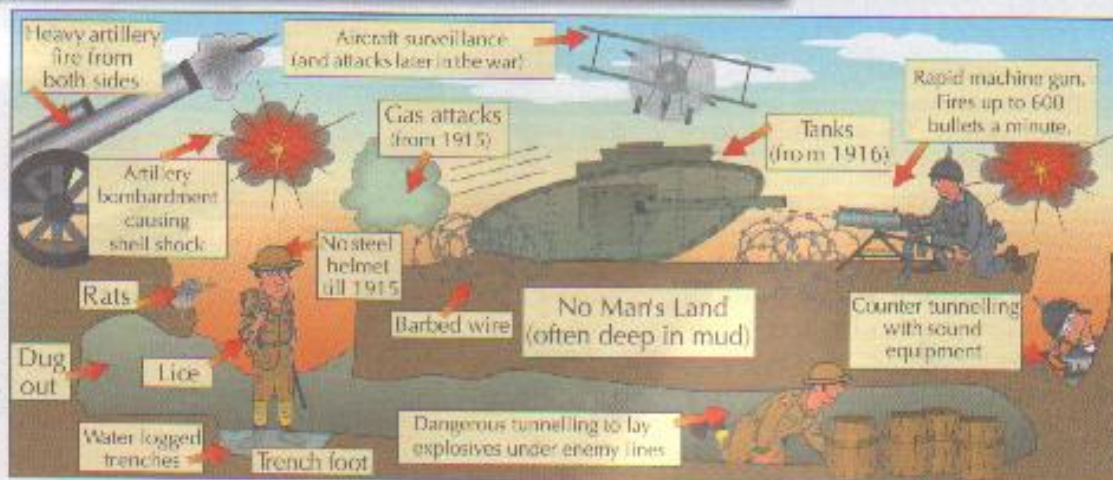
- machine guns ready to mow down an attack
- heavy guns placed behind the trenches
- guards to spot an attack by the other side
- support trenches led back from the front line to bring in men and supplies
- protected by barbed wire

...and difficult to attack.

- artillery was meant to break through the enemy's barbed wire and wear them down to make attacks easier
- in practice it just warned the other side an attack was coming
- the land between the trenches was often knee-deep or even waist-deep in mud

- 4) Even if you made it to the enemy trench in one place, it was hard to hang on to your position because you were surrounded by the enemy's forces in the rest of the trench.

Life in the trenches was hard and dangerous



Each man got paid one shilling a day. The main rations were bully beef, jam, and tea.

Thousands of lives were lost for small gains

- 1) Both sides had plenty of men and plenty of money for ammunition and weapons, so Generals kept sending more and more men 'over the top' — even though it didn't achieve any obvious success.
- 2) The major battles in 1915 were Neuve Chapelle, Loos and the 2nd Battle of Ypres. Thousands of lives were lost but neither side gained much from the battles — the front line hardly moved at all.
- 3) Sir John French was replaced as commander by Sir Douglas Haig.

Trench warfare — wearing the other side down

You definitely need to know what the trenches were like. The picture will help you.

You also need to learn the lists of points (in the boxes) about defending and attacking the trenches.

Tanks and Aircraft

this now...

Tanks and planes were used for the very first time in the First World War. Not surprisingly they made a massive difference to the way wars were fought. That's what you've got to learn about.

At first aircraft were used for surveillance and bombing

Main defences in a bombing raid



- 1) On the Western Front both sides used planes and balloons to look for weak points along the trenches where it would be easier to attack.
- 2) The Germans used hydrogen-filled airships called Zeppelins to carry bombs. In May 1915 there was a major bombing raid on London. The Zeppelins were easy to shoot down because they were so big.
- 3) Both sides developed planes which could be used for long-distance bombing raids. The first serious raid on Britain was in June 1917 — 95 people were killed at Folkestone. Britain sent bombers into Germany too.
- 4) By the end of the War, bombers could go hundreds of kilometres without refuelling. The new technology was later used to set up the first passenger airlines.

Fighter planes were developed during the war

- 1) The early planes were slow and difficult to steer. Also, ordinary machine guns were no use as they were hard to aim, and there was a danger of shooting off the propellers.
- 2) In 1915 new planes carried synchronised machine guns which wouldn't shoot the propeller. One man could fly and handle the gun — where before they'd always needed two people.
- 3) The fighter planes were used to escort bombers on raids and to bring down enemy bombers. They also fought each other, especially on the Western Front.
- 4) The Royal Air Force was formed in 1918 out of the Army's Royal Flying Corps and the Navy's Flying units. By the end of the war, the RAF had over 20,000 bombers and fighters.
- 5) Pilots like Albert Ball and Mike Mannick became national heroes. Likewise, Germany had Manfred Von Richthofen (The Red Baron) and France had Celestin-Adolphe Pegoud. They were known as "air aces".

Tanks made it easier to attack on the ground

Tank tracks meant they could go over very rough ground, and plough through barbed wire without problems. The heavily armoured body of the tanks meant ordinary gun fire couldn't stop them. Tanks should have allowed the British army to break the deadlock on the trenches, but it took a while to develop effective tactics, and the early tanks often broke down.

- 1) The first time tanks were used was at the Battle of the Somme in July 1916. Sir Douglas Haig sent in 49 tanks. He could have waited for more, but he decided it was more important to surprise the Germans, and went ahead anyway. The tank division captured 2km of German-held territory but couldn't hold on to it.
- 2) At Cambrai on the Western Front in November 1917, tanks were used much more successfully. Nearly 500 tanks advanced about 6km into German territory, but again couldn't hold onto their gains.

New technology — it changed warfare forever...

The development of aeroplanes and tanks as weapons is one of the most important long-term effects of the First World War. Draw a timeline for each weapon, giving dates for the main events.

The Western Front

The Battle of the Somme was a major attack by the British Army against the German line. It led to a staggering loss of life — and had a long-term effect on how the war was remembered.

The Battle of the Somme killed 1 million men

In February 1916, the Germans began an attack on Allied forces around Verdun. If they captured Verdun, Paris would be open to attack.

By July, 700 000 men were dead. In order to relieve the pressure on Verdun, Haig decided on a major attack.

- 1) This was the Battle of the Somme. It began on 1 July 1916.
- 2) After a massive artillery bombardment, the soldiers were sent 'over the top' to charge the German trenches.
- 3) British soldiers were under orders to advance slowly, not run.
- 4) This gave the Germans time to get ready. The slow-moving British soldiers were an easy target.
- 5) 57 000 Britons were killed or wounded on the first day alone. 21 000 died in 1 hour.
- 6) The battle dragged on to November. By then over 1 million soldiers had died. 418 000 were British.



The Battle of the Somme had mixed results

- 1) Despite the months of fighting and all the deaths, very little ground was gained. In some places the Allied forces advanced about 7 miles, in others it was only a few hundred metres.
- 2) The Germans weren't beaten at the Somme, but they took a severe battering. The battle probably helped to wear them down. Haig had wanted a breakthrough — what he got was a "war of attrition".
- 3) Many men in the army were appalled at how many lives were lost. They felt the Generals' tactics were wrong — and some started to lose confidence in the officers commanding the war.
- 4) There was less confidence in the artillery too. They were supposed to destroy the German barbed wire before the attack and didn't manage to do it.
- 5) Back in Britain film footage of the battle was shown in cinemas. Even though some of it was faked people were horrified by the reality of the battle. It wasn't the great heroic ideal they'd imagined.

People still can't agree on whether the tactics were right

Many people nowadays feel that the tactics used at the Somme and in other battles were wrong. Their picture of the First World War comes from TV, books and films — which often see Haig as a "Butcher". But in fact, it's much more complicated than that. Here are some of the main opinions on both sides.

AGAINST

- Hundreds of thousands of men were killed under his command. Haig said "The attacks are to be pressed, regardless of loss."
- Haig could have waited for more tanks, which might have saved many lives.
- Once he saw the first day's slaughter he could have changed his tactics.

FOR

- Haig's overall strategy was to wear the Germans down, whatever the cost. It's every general's job to win wars, not to save lives.
- Haig couldn't wait for more tanks — he had to relieve the pressure on Verdun, or the whole war might be lost. He used the tanks he had.
- By 1918, Haig had learnt to adapt these attacking tactics so that they became highly successful.

The Somme — be sure to give both sides of the story...

The Somme was a disaster — but many people argue it was necessary. If you're going to write about it, you have to give both sides of the argument. Don't miss out the actual facts though.

The War at Sea

The First World War didn't stop at the Western Front. The Navy's blockades in the North Sea and the Baltic were really important in wearing Germany down.

Blockades were more important than all-out battles

- 1) The Royal Navy patrolled the North Sea and the Baltic.
- 2) The aim was to stop food and supplies for Germany being delivered to German ports or ports belonging to neutral countries like the Netherlands and Scandinavia.
- 3) The Navy blockades also prevented German ships from getting out to open sea where they could fight.
- 4) The only weapon the Germans had against the Royal Navy was the U-boats (submarines). At first Germany was careful not to attack ships from neutral countries or passenger ships.
- 5) Britain realised this and started shipping arms and ammunition in passenger ships.
- 6) The British ocean liner the Lusitania was used to bring over weapons in April 1915. A German U-boat torpedoed the ship and 1000 people died, mostly civilians.
- 7) About 100 of the dead were from the USA. Up to this point the USA was neutral, but after the sinking of the Lusitania America supported the Allies, and joined the war on their side in 1917.

The German and British navies clashed at Jutland



- 1) Before the war Germany and England raced to build Dreadnoughts — 18 000 ton battleships. Both sides had invested a lot in the new ships and were nervous of risking them in a big battle.
- 2) In the end the only major battle between the Dreadnought fleets was The Battle of Jutland in May 1916. Admiral von Scheer hoped to lure the British fleet out of their base at Jutland in Denmark and then unleash a massive attack.
- 3) The British fleet turned out to be bigger than von Scheer expected and the sides were quite evenly matched. The two sides fired at each other for several hours, but it was a misty evening and hard to see the targets.

It's not easy to say which side was the winner:

- The British lost 14 ships, and the Germans lost 11.
- The British ships were more severely damaged.
- The Germans left the battle first.

The Battle of Jutland led to more U-boat attacks

- 1) After Jutland the German Dreadnoughts stayed in harbour. Britain had control of the surface, and German U-boat attacks on British shipping became more intense.
- 2) When food supplies in Britain became dangerously low in April 1917, Prime Minister Lloyd George introduced a convoy system which helped ships escape the submarines (see P.46).

The war at sea — blockades, U-boats and Jutland...

The war at sea is a crucial part of understanding how life changed back home in Britain. U-boats threatened food supplies which led to rationing. Make sure you know about Jutland.

Volunteers from the Empire

Don't forget that Britain didn't fight alone in the First World War. As well as the French army, there were also soldiers from the British Empire — from Canada, Australia and New Zealand.

Canadians, Australians and New Zealanders volunteered

- 1) 418 000 Canadians fought in Europe. 56 000 died. Another 200 000 defended Canada.
- 2) 322 000 Australian soldiers fought in the First World War. 60 000 died.
- 3) 124 000 New Zealanders fought in the War. 17 000 died.
- 4) The Australian and New Zealand Army Corps were known as ANZACs.

Before the First World War Canadians, New Zealanders and Australians still saw themselves as British. They didn't see their countries as separate, so it seemed right to them that they should join up.

Gallipoli was the worst part of the war for the ANZACS

The Gallipoli campaign was fought in 1915 — when the stalemate on the Western Front was at its worst. Britain's main aim was to open up the route to the Black Sea by attacking Turkey, so they could help Russia.

- 1) The campaign began in February. The Navy tried to advance up the Dardanelles but couldn't get past Turkish forts and mines.
- 2) The Navy pulled out and the Army was sent in. The force was made up of one British division, and ANZAC and French troops.
- 3) The idea was to cross the Gallipoli peninsula and capture the Turkish capital Constantinople. The land assault began in April.
- 4) The Turks were ready for the Allied troops. By firing down from hills above the beaches the Turks stopped the Allies from advancing at all.
- 5) The ANZACs, French and British were forced to dig trenches. They spent the summer and autumn under fire, suffering from heat and disease, and with poor supplies of food and ammunition. There were 40 000 casualties by August.
- 6) Perhaps it should have been obvious from the start that the situation was impossible, but it wasn't till December that the evacuation began. 105 000 soldiers were withdrawn.
- 7) The Turks lost even more men than the allies: 65 000 died. This seriously weakened their army, but it wasn't obvious at the time. In December 1916 it just looked like bad planning.



Over a third of the ANZACs who went to Gallipoli died. Gallipoli is remembered as one of the most wasteful campaigns of the war. Some people argue that it was after Gallipoli that Australia and New Zealand started to see themselves as separate countries.

Canadians served in the Army, the Navy and the Air Force

- 1) There were 13 000 Canadians in the Air Force, and 2 000 in the Navy.
- 2) Canadian Army divisions fought on the Western Front. They captured and held Vimy Ridge from the Germans in April 1917. Vimy was a major obstacle to the Germans when they tried an attack in spring 1918.

Gallipoli — another military disaster for the Allies...

Having an Empire made a big difference to Britain in the war. Learn the facts about Gallipoli. Yes, it looks complicated, but it'll look a whole lot better once you've started learning it. Get scribbling.

The War at Home

When the First World War broke out the government had to be sure Britain was ready to cope. They gave themselves special powers by getting parliament to pass a law.

Parliament passed the Defence of the Realm Act

The **Defence of the Realm Act** was passed in **August 1914**, right at the start of the war. There were two basic things the government was trying to do:

1. Make sure the country had enough resources to fight the war.
2. Make sure British people were in a fit state to fight and support the war effort.

The law allowed the government to...

- take control of vital industries like coal mining
- take over three million acres of land and buildings
- bring in British Summer Time for more daylight (working) hours
- control drinking hours and the strength of alcohol

- introduce conscription

- stop people talking about war or spreading rumours
- censor newspapers
- enforce rationing

Thousands of men volunteered to fight — but it wasn't enough

When war broke out, thousands of men rushed to volunteer for the fighting. They believed the war would be over quickly — 'by Christmas'. They thought it was going to be an adventure, and wanted to take part of it. The enthusiasm didn't last.

By 1915 the number of casualties was going up — and the number of volunteers was slowing down. On the Western Front so many men were being killed and wounded that there weren't enough volunteers to replace them.

There was also a growing feeling in Britain that it wasn't fair that some men were avoiding military duty.

The Government introduced conscription in 1916

1. Single men aged between 18 and 41 had to fight.
2. When there still weren't enough soldiers, married men had to join up too.
3. People who didn't believe in fighting were called conscientious objectors. They were treated as criminals and sent to prison. Some were even shot. They were seen as traitors because they refused to fight.

Women started doing "men's jobs"

Many of the original volunteers came from heavy industries like coal mining. There was a shortage of workers in these industries and without them Britain couldn't supply the army. When conscription started there were even fewer men available to do the vital jobs. Women started taking their places in the pits and factories.



Living at home — major changes were needed...

Everyone got to know all about the Defence of the Realm Act, and conscription. Cover the page and write down everything the government did to help the country cope with the strains of the war.

Food Shortages

Britain had problems keeping food supplies going in the war. Something needed to be done to make sure nobody starved. The important thing is to learn all three of Lloyd George's tactics.

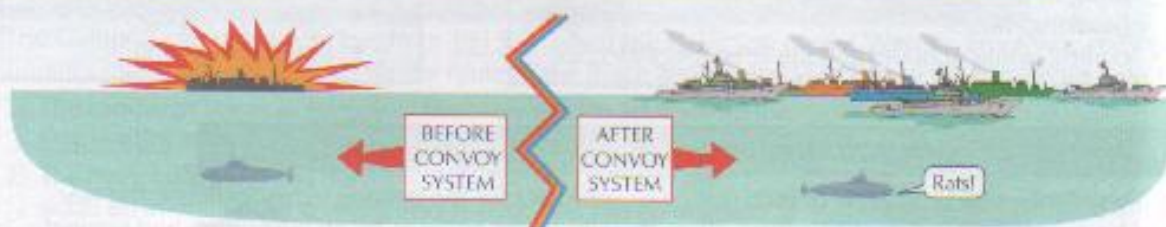
German U-boats made it hard to import food

In 1914 Britain was used to importing quite a lot of food from the United States and countries that were part of the Empire. Germany used U-boats (submarines) to attack shipping all round Britain and made it impossible to import all the food Britain needed to survive. By April 1917 Britain only had six weeks' supply of wheat.

Britain used blockades against Germany too. There's more about the war at sea on P43.

The Prime Minister was David Lloyd George. He took three big steps to solve the food crisis.

1) Navy convoys protected merchant ships coming in to Britain



Ships travelling alone were easy targets for the U-boats. 25% of merchant ships coming into Britain were being sunk.

The Navy began a convoy system. Merchant ships travelled in groups with an escort of Royal Navy ships to protect them.

U-boats couldn't attack as easily. With the convoy system only 1% of ships were sunk.

2) Food rationing started in 1918

When food rationing started in 1917 it was voluntary. In 1918 shortages were still a problem and rationing was made compulsory for beer, butter, sugar and meat. People still got roughly the same amount to eat. The idea was to control the food supply, not the amount of food people had to eat.

- 1) Everyone got rationing coupons. They had to hand them over when they bought beer, butter, sugar and meat. When the week's coupons for say, sugar, ran out, they couldn't buy any more that week.
- 2) Some people hoarded food, partly because they were afraid it would run out, and partly because of increasing prices. They would sell it on later creating a 'black market' in food.
- 3) There were shortages of some kinds of food but no-one starved.
- 4) The Government had never been this involved in organising people's daily lives before.

3) Britain grew more food

Farmers were encouraged to use more of their land so they could grow more food. There was an excellent harvest in 1917.

The Women's Land Army was set up. Women from the Land Army were a big new labour force available to work on the farms.

Food supply was crucial to avoiding a crisis

How Lloyd George avoided a Food Supply Crisis is pretty important — you've definitely got to know about the three steps he took: convoys, rationing and production.

Attitudes to the War in Britain

There's a dramatic difference between people's cheerful attitude at the beginning of the war and their gloom at the waste of life by the end. Make sure you know why attitudes had changed so much.

At the start the war looked like an *adventure*

1914 there was huge enthusiasm for the war. It seems strange now, but of course nobody at the time knew what it was going to be like. These are some of the things people felt about the war:

Fighting in the war
would be an
adventure.

It was right to fight
for your country
when it went to war.

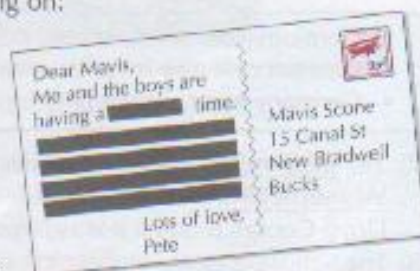
The war would be "over by Christmas". Britain would win easily.

Obviously not everybody thought exactly like this — but a fair few did.

First people **didn't really know** what was going on

Government deliberately kept people ignorant of what was going on:

- Letters from soldiers were censored.
Reporters weren't allowed to see battles very often.
Newspapers were censored from 1915. Anyway, they didn't want to depress their readers so they didn't let things sound as bad as they really were.
No photographs could be taken which showed dead soldiers.
Casualty figures weren't available from the Government.
Even even Parliament wasn't told how the war was really going.



There had never been a war where most of the fighting was done in trenches before, and there had never been a war where so many people were killed before. People who weren't actually involved in the fighting couldn't begin to imagine how many people were dying, and how awful the trenches were.

During the war ordinary people's attitudes changed

The Government couldn't keep the facts about the War secret forever.
The war carried on people couldn't help finding out more, and attitudes began to change.

- During the war 1500 civilians were killed in bombing raids. This was a new and terrible danger. There were no obvious successes on the Western Front up until 1918. There were several disasters, like the Somme and Gallipoli. The deaths seemed pointless when there was nothing to show for them. The Government could hide the overall casualty figures, but they couldn't hide crippled and blinded veterans who returned to Britain, or keep deaths secret from the families of soldiers. Soldiers returning on leave were able to describe the trenches. Many writers and artists celebrated the war at the start. By 1917, many soldiers were disillusioned with the way the war was being run. From then on, and well into the 1920s and 1930s, people wrote poems and autobiographies about how awful life in the trenches had been. Living was difficult, and richer people felt it was a hardship. Taxes had increased to pay for the war.

By 1917 most people in Britain were sick of the war, and wanted to see it end.

The First World War was far bloodier than any previous conflict

Write a list of the main reasons why attitudes to the war changed between 1914 and 1917.

The End of the War

The war changed everybody's lives whether they'd been away **fighting**, or stayed at home. It wasn't easy to get used to **normal life** again — especially for the soldiers. Learn all these **effects** of the war.

The war finally ended in November 1918

- 1) The USA joined the Allies in **April 1917**. Only **one division** was sent at first.
- 2) More Americans were sent during **1918**. The German commander **Ludendorff** decided to try **one more** big attack **before** there were so many Allied troops that a German victory would be impossible.
- 3) The Ludendorff offensive **nearly worked**, thanks to **new tactics** in trench warfare — attacking **several points** along the line at the **same time**, with a constant artillery bombardment of the enemy as support.
- 4) The Allies counterattacked from different sides. **Haig** began an attack on the German line near **Amiens** in France on **8 August 1918**. Hundreds of tanks were sent in and the Germans were pushed back through France **towards Germany**. The Allied forces **could have** pushed right through into Germany, but **before** that happened an **armistice** (a sort of ceasefire) was signed.
- 5) The trench warfare had **worn Germany down**. **Mutinies**, **food shortages** and **revolution** in Germany made it **impossible** for the Germans to carry on. They **asked for** the armistice and it was signed on **11 November**.
- 6) The peace treaty was signed at **Versailles** in **January 1919**.

See pages 55–59 for more about the peace settlement.

- Germany had to return land taken from France, Belgium, Poland and others.
- German colonies in Africa were shared between France and Britain.
- Germany had to pay reparations of £6600 million to compensate the Allies for the cost of the war.

- 7) The **main negotiators** at Versailles were **Lloyd George**, **Clemenceau** the French Prime Minister, and **Woodrow Wilson** the US President. The **French** thought the peace treaty should **punish** Germany. Lloyd George thought it was important to punish Germany, but **not** to make them **bitter**.
- 8) The Versailles treaty **embittered** and nearly **bankrupted** Germany. It would be remembered in the future.

The war was known as “the war to end all wars”

People in Britain thought there could **never** be another war as bad as the First World War.

The **mood** in Britain immediately after the war was pretty **bleak**.

- 1) The government had tried to **control information** during the war. Even so, people had found out some **real** facts about the war. Many now felt that **politicians** and **authority figures** couldn't always be **trusted**.
- 2) Many people **came to believe** that the Generals had been **incompetent**, and that they **didn't care** how many lives were lost. This gave people **even more reason** to stop trusting people in powerful positions.
- 3) The **public school officers** in the trenches turned out to be no more competent than the **working class soldiers**. Some people began to **question** the way the upper classes dominated society.
- 4) Soldiers who'd been through the War were even more **disillusioned** when they returned home. There was **unemployment** and **poverty**. They wondered what they had been **fighting for**.
- 5) **No war** in history had produced so many **casualties**. It felt as though the loss of **huge numbers** of young men had changed the **balance of society**.

There were some **positive** outcomes of the war too. Even though people had many reasons to be **disappointed** there **was** a sense of satisfaction that Britain had won. Attitudes towards **women** and the **poorer** members of society generally improved, as the war showed **everyone** could do something useful if they were given the opportunity. **Lloyd George** got **re-elected** as Prime Minister in **December 1918**.



The Versailles Treaty — the roots of another war

Don't forget the **final facts** about **1918** and the **Versailles Treaty**, as well as the **effects** of the war. If you do an **essay** about the effects of the war, include the **positive** things as well as the **negative** ones.

Women's Rights in 1900

Women in 1900 were treated differently from men. Most women had little schooling and didn't go to university. Instead they spent their lives raising children and working to run a house. Not much of a life...

Women couldn't vote in national elections

During the nineteenth century, several reform acts had given more and more people in Britain the vote — but only men. Most of the population thought it was perfectly sensible that women didn't have the vote.

They thought the big wide world was men's business. Women's business was looking after the home.

Many people believed that women weren't very rational so they wouldn't be able to make big decisions.

Many politicians thought that men needed to be householders to get the vote. Only a very few rich women owned houses or paid the rent, so it would be a bit odd to give them a vote.

If only rich women got the vote they'd most likely vote Conservative. The Liberals didn't like that idea.

In 1894 women were allowed to vote for district councils, and to sit on the councils.

But they still couldn't vote in national elections for MPs or become MPs themselves.

Women's legal rights weren't equal — but getting better

For a long time married women were not protected in law — but several new laws in the nineteenth century had made things much better. These laws gave them more rights in marriage.

1857 The Matrimonial Clauses Act made it easier for a woman to get a divorce through ordinary law courts. You needed to prove your husband had committed adultery or cruelty or left you. Before the Act, only Parliament could grant divorces.

1870 The Married Women's Property Act gave women the right to keep their property and earnings when they got married. Before the Act it all went to the husband automatically. The Married Women's Act said that a husband who left his wife had to keep paying for her maintenance — i.e. her living expenses.

1886 The Guardianship of Infants Act allowed women to be their children's legal guardians if the father died or if the marriage broke up. Being the legal guardian meant having responsibility for any property left to the children as well as seeing they were properly looked after.

They had a chance of an education or a professional job

The North London Collegiate School for Girls was founded by Frances Mary Buss in 1850, & Cheltenham Ladies College was founded by Dorothea Beale in 1858. These fee-paying schools were expensive, but no use to most women, but they did set a high standard for secondary education for girls.

Queen's College at Cambridge University was founded in 1869. Women could go to lectures and have exams though they couldn't get degrees. Most British universities were admitting women by 1900.

Queen's College, London was opened to train women teachers in 1858.

MEDICINE

Medical schools opened their doors to women in 1876. The first woman to become a qualified doctor in Britain was Elizabeth Garrett.

TEACHING

More and more girls' schools opened towards the end of the century providing teaching jobs for women.

NURSING

Florence Nightingale established nursing as a proper job. She set up training schools where women could train to be nurses.

Who'd want to be a woman in 1900

Women's lives in 1900 weren't that great — make sure you learn the reasons why many people thought women shouldn't vote — and the four acts which had given women more legal rights.

The Campaign for the Vote 1900-1914

The campaign for women's votes wasn't brand new in 1900 — but the campaigns from 1900 to 1914 were more energetic than ever. Some campaigns were peaceful, some weren't...

The **SUFFRAGISTS** were moderate in their protests

- 1) The Suffragists' formal name was the NATIONAL UNION OF WOMEN'S SUFFRAGE SOCIETIES.
- 2) They were founded in 1897. Their leader was called Millicent Fawcett.
- 3) Their main tactics were persuasion, meetings and petitions to Parliament.

suffrage = the
right to vote

The **SUFFRAGETTES** were more direct

- 1) The Suffragettes' formal name was the WOMEN'S SOCIAL AND POLITICAL UNION.
- 2) The movement was founded by Emmeline Pankhurst in 1903, with her daughters Christabel and Sydney.
- 3) The Suffragettes thought the Suffragists took things too slowly. They wanted to see results, and fast.
- 4) The Suffragettes didn't mind getting arrested. It attracted some sympathy and showed they were serious about getting the vote. In 1905 Christabel Pankhurst and Annie Kenney heckled Sir Edward Grey, who was speaking at a meeting in Manchester, and ended up in prison for a week.
- 5) They thought the Liberal Government after 1906 would be sympathetic. They were encouraged by the 1907 Qualification of Women Act which let women become county and borough councillors, or mayors.

After 1912 the protests got more extreme

By 1912 the Liberal Government had accepted the idea of some women voting, and tried to put it into their Plural Voting Bill for Parliament to discuss. But the Speaker refused to let them add it. The Suffragettes were furious and protests got far more extreme and violent.

- 1) Suffragettes chained themselves to railings outside Downing Street and Buckingham Palace.
- 2) They physically assaulted politicians. The Prime Minister, Asquith, was attacked on a golf course. Suffragettes tried to tear off his clothes, and beat him with dog whips.
- 3) They destroyed paintings in the National Gallery, and smashed shop windows.
- 4) Suffragettes made arson attacks on post boxes, churches and railway stations. They even bombed the house of Lloyd George, the Chancellor of the Exchequer.
- 5) At the 1913 Derby at Epsom, a Suffragette called Emily Davison threw herself under the feet of the King's horse. She died of her injuries. The 1913 Derby was then referred to as The Suffragette Derby.

Suffragists thought these tactics held the campaign back.

They were probably right — the Government didn't want to be seen to be giving in to violence. The violence also put off many moderate supporters.

The Government dealt with the protests harshly

- 1) They sent many Suffragettes to prison. The Suffragettes often went on hunger strike, so the prison authorities force-fed them, but this was dangerous and violent.
- 2) The "Cat and Mouse" Act was passed in 1913. Under this Act the authorities could release hunger strikers then rearrest them when they were fit again.



Suffragettes and Suffragists — same goals but different methods

Try not to get Suffragettes and Suffragists mixed up. Watch out for questions on whether protests helped win the vote — you'll need to write about all the types of protest, and what effect they had.

Women and the Vote 1918-1928

1900 to 1914

At the end of the First World War there was a different attitude to the Suffrage Movement. Firstly, the war had made the Suffragette violence of 1913 and 1914 seem a bit less serious. But there were other reasons too — especially the work women had done for the war effort.

SOCIETIES.

franchise = the right to vote

instable and Sylvia, and fast, they were

on for a week

During the war women did "men's jobs"

Basically, so many men were away fighting in the war that there weren't enough to do vital jobs. The jobs were opened up to women — women were happy to take them, and they proved that they could do them just as well as men.

Women worked as: bus conductors, drivers, postal workers, farm labourers and coal deliverers. All these vital jobs kept the country going.

They also worked in the munitions factories, and engineering workshops.

This work was technical, and directly related to the war effort.

Women also joined women's branches of the armed forces.

and worked as nurses in military hospitals.

By doing work that helped Britain win the war, women proved that they were important to public life as well as home life. There was also a sense of gratitude towards women for their contribution.



The other reasons for giving women the vote were...

1. A shake-up of the voting system was already happening. There was a rule that a man could only vote after living at the same address for 1 year. This needed to be changed to allow soldiers who had been away fighting to vote. If the voting system was going to be changed anyway, there was a chance to include women.

2. People's attitudes to women had changed — and not just because of the war.

A lot of people remembered the Suffragettes' protests and felt it was unfair that women had been denied full political rights.

3. The Suffragettes had called off their campaign at the beginning of the war.

Nobody wanted them starting up again.

Women 30+ got the vote in 1918

1. The Representation of the People Act was passed in 1918.

2. Not all women got the vote. The ones who did had to be:

over 30 and a
householder

OR

over 21 and married
to a householder

The same act gave all men over 21 the right to vote.

Women were also able to become MPs. Constance Markiewicz, a Sinn Féin candidate, was elected in 1918 but didn't take up her seat. The first woman to actually become an MP was Nancy Astor who got elected in 1919.

3. The vote didn't go to all women over 21 until 1928, when women finally got equal voting rights.

hods

protests
they had.

The War finally swung the balance in favour of Women's Suffrage

The 1918 Representation of the People Act is a big landmark — make sure you know exactly which women got the vote. But just as important, scribble a list of the main reasons why they got it.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

More questions for you to do — I know how much you love them.

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List three improvements to women's legal rights before 1900.
- 2) List five ways in which the campaign for votes for women became more extreme after 1912.
- 3) How did the government deal with the Suffragette movement before 1914?
- 4) Briefly explain how World War One affected women.
- 5) Why did the vote not lead to instant equality?

Source A: Description of Suffragette tactics from Emmeline Pankhurst's Autobiography.

"This was the beginning of a campaign the like of which was never known in England or for that matter in any other country ... we interrupted a great many meetings ... and we were violently thrown out and insulted. Often we were painfully bruised and hurt."

Emmeline Pankhurst was a leading Suffragette.



Source B: Illustration of disruption to a speech made by Lloyd George to the Women's Liberal Federation.

From a painting produced in 1908.

Source C: Women over thirty get the vote.

"Gratitude for women's war work cannot explain why only women over the age of 30 got the vote while it was the younger women who had done the work ... It is more convincing to argue that the lobbying of the feminist movement and the commitment of the Labour Party ... were crucial factors ... it was a case of the suffragists being around at the right time."

From *Women and Employment on the Home Front During World War One* by Professor Joanna Bourke, a modern historian.

Source D: The success of the Suffrage movement.

"I have seen great days, but this is the greatest. I remember when we started twenty-one years ago, with empty coffers ... I never believed that equal votes would come in my lifetime. But when an impossible dream comes true, we must go on to another. The true unity of men and women is one such dream. The end of war, of famine — they are all impossible dreams, but the dream must be dreamed until it takes a spiritual hold."

From a speech made by Charlotte Despard at the Women's Freedom League meeting in 1919.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What can you learn from **Source A** about the Suffragettes campaign for the vote before 1914?

(5 marks)

- (b) Compare **Source A** and **Source B**.

Do the two sources agree about why the Suffragette campaign for votes gained such a lot of publicity?

(6 marks)

- (c) How useful is **Source B** as evidence of the campaign for votes for women before 1914?

Explain your answer using **Source B** and **your own knowledge**.

(8 marks)

- (d) **Sources C** and **D** give different interpretations of the reasons why women were given the vote in 1918.

Why do you think these interpretations are so different?

Explain your answer using **Sources C** and **D** and **your own knowledge**.

(10 marks)

- (e) Use **your own knowledge** to explain why women were given the right to vote in 1918.

(15 marks)

Revision Summary

This is a huge section. Just keep in mind that you need to concentrate on Britain's role in the war; how life changed at home, and how the reality of war changed people's attitudes to governments, the upper classes, and to war. Women's rights and freedoms changed pretty drastically too. These questions are here to test what you've learnt. They aren't GCSE questions — and they're not what you'll get in your Exam. But they will show you if you've got this topic straight in your own mind... or if you've still got a bit of work to do.

- 1) Who were Britain's allies at the start of the First World War?
- 2) What was the Schlieffen Plan? How was it supposed to work?
- 3) What does BEF stand for? *a) British Exploring Force. b) British Expeditionary Force.*
- 4) Name the three major battles fought in 1914 which stopped the German advance.
- 5) How many men had volunteered for the army in Britain by September 1914?
a) a million b) a quarter of a million c) half a million
- 6) Give two reasons why trenches were easy to defend.
- 7) Give two reasons why trenches were easy to attack.
- 8) Who replaced Sir John French as the British commander in 1915?
- 9) What two main tasks were aircraft used for during the war?
- 10) Give two reasons why tanks made ground attacks easier than before.
- 11) What was the reason for the British attack on the Somme?
- 12) How many men were killed or wounded on the first day of the Battle of the Somme?
- 13) Give two reasons why some people say Haig's tactics at the Somme were wrong.
- 14) Give two reasons why some people say Haig's tactics at the Somme were right.
- 15) What weapon did the Germans use against the Royal Navy and passenger ships?
- 16) Give two reasons why it's hard to say who won the Battle of Jutland, 1916.
- 17) What does ANZAC stand for?
- 18) What was the name of the campaign to capture Constantinople from the Turks?
- 19) Give four things the Government was allowed to do by the Defence of the Realm Act 1914.
- 20) When was conscription introduced?
- 21) What three steps did Lloyd George take to avoid a food supply crisis?
- 22) Give three reasons why people's attitudes to the war changed between 1914 and 1918.
- 23) Give two of the main points from the Versailles Treaty 1919.
- 24) Give two reasons why the mood was bleak in Britain after the war.
- 25) Give four reasons why some people believed women shouldn't have the vote in 1900.
- 26) What two acts were brought in, in 1870? What did they do to help women?
- 27) Who were the Suffragists? Who was their leader?
- 28) Who were the Suffragettes? In what ways were they different from the Suffragists?
- 29) What happened in 1912 to make the Suffragettes' campaign turn more extreme?
- 30) Give four examples of extreme tactics used by the Suffragettes.
- 31) How did the Government deal with these protests?
- 32) List all the advantages and disadvantages of the Suffragettes' tactics you can think of.
- 33) Give four reasons why some women got the vote after the First World War.
- 34) What categories of women got the right to vote in the Representation of the People Act, 1918?
- 35) When did women finally get equal voting rights to men? What age did they have to be?

The Peace Settlement

After the War, the winning countries argued about what should happen to the losers.

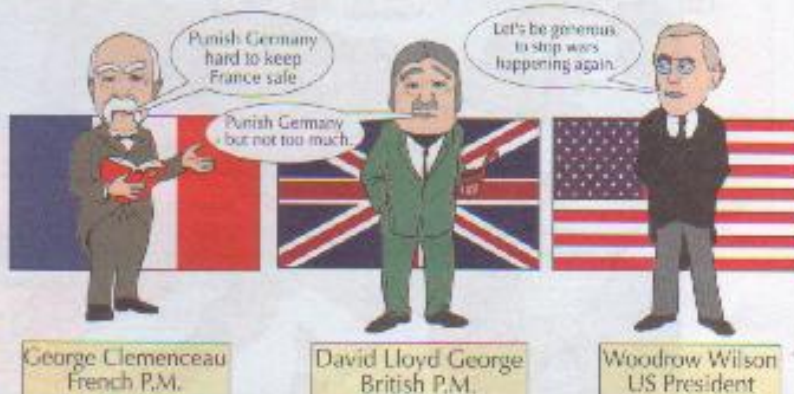
The three concerns for the winners

- 1) Millions of people were dead or injured; countries like Belgium and France were devastated; the main powers had spent too much money on the War.
- 2) Many people wanted Germany to take all the blame, especially in Britain and in France most of all — Germany wasn't allowed to take part in the talks but most Germans didn't accept this.
- 3) Everyone wanted to make sure a war like this wouldn't happen again, but they couldn't agree on how this could be done — the system of Alliances had obviously failed.



The 'Big Three' — France, Britain and the USA

- 1) All three countries had ideas about the Peace — and they often disagreed.
- 2) So a compromise was reached — only some of their ideas became part of the settlement.
- 3) The key fact to remember is that the French had suffered badly, and the British had also suffered — this meant they both wanted to punish the Germans. People in the USA didn't suffer in the same way — they were more detached and wanted to stay impartial.



Wilson's Fourteen Points

- 1) President Wilson had come up with the Fourteen Points in January 1918 when the Germans were asking for a truce.
- 2) Germany had rejected them, but when the fighting ended in November they hoped that the peace settlement would be based on them.
- 3) The Allies refused because the Germans had rejected them before.
- 4) But the Fourteen Points were an important part of the peace process — especially point 14 which called for a League of Nations to settle disputes. This was going to become very important between the two World Wars.

● WILSON'S FOURTEEN POINTS ● JANUARY 1918

1. No secret treaties
2. Free access to the sea for all
3. Free trade between countries
4. Disarmament by all countries
5. Colonies to have a say in their own future
6. Russia to be free of German troops
7. Belgium to be independent
8. Alsace-Lorraine to go to France
9. New frontier between Austria & Italy
10. Self-determination for people of Eastern Europe
11. Serbia to have access to sea
12. Self-determination for people in Turkish Empire
13. Poland to be independent with access to the sea
14. League of Nations to settle disputes

The fourteen points — giving peace a chance

Above are the three main concerns for the winners — you need to learn them now. Don't forget the reasons why Britain and France had different ideas from the USA, and learn Wilson's Fourteen Points.

The Versailles Treaty

The Treaty of Versailles was signed in June 1919



- 1) The Versailles Treaty dealt with Germany, but the other defeated countries made separate treaties (see P. 59).
- 2) This map shows the key changes, so go around it carefully and make sure you know who got what.
- 3) Start by looking at the land Germany lost — especially the large piece of land to the left of Germany, Alsace and Lorraine (A). The Rhineland (R) was demilitarised — Germany wasn't allowed to have troops there since it was close enough to invade France and Belgium from.
- 4) Look at the new countries set up. The Ottoman Empire, and the Austro-Hungarian Empire were split up, and new countries created from their lands. Many were artificial countries with many nationalities and were therefore very unstable.

Versailles led to big territorial losses for the defeated nations

Versailles was the key document in Europe for the next twenty years and a major cause of the Second World War. Make sure you can compare the results of the Versailles Treaty with the Fourteen Points.

The Versailles Treaty

The results of the Versaille Treaty were severe



- 1) Germany had to take the blame for the War — the War-Guilt Clause.
- 2) Germany's armed forces were reduced to 100,000 men, only volunteers, without armoured vehicles, aircraft, or submarines, and only 6 warships.
- 3) German troops weren't allowed in the Rhineland — the area was demilitarised.
- 4) Germany was forced to pay £6.6 billion in reparations — payments for the damage caused. The amount was decided in 1921 but was changed later. It would have taken Germany until the 1980's to pay.
- 5) Germany lost its Empire — areas around the world that used to belong to Germany were now called Mandates, and they were going to be run by...
- 6) ...The League of Nations, which was set up to keep world peace — you're going to have to learn a lot more about this organisation...(see P. 62)

No-one liked the Treaty — Lloyd-George and Wilson thought it wouldn't work, and Clemenceau was criticised because many French people thought it wasn't harsh enough.

Some people said the treaty was fair

- 1) The War had caused so much death and damage.
- 2) Germany had to be stopped from doing it again.
- 3) People in France and Britain wanted revenge — politicians listened to them so that they could stay in power.



Others said the treaty was too harsh

- 1) The Treaty was unfair on Germany — the punishment was too severe.
- 2) The Germans were left weak and resentful — this could lead to anger and cause future trouble, like another war.
- 3) The Treaty wouldn't help rebuild European trade and wealth — Germany couldn't afford the reparations, and many of the new countries were poor.
- 4) The men who negotiated peace faced problems and pressure from the people at home.



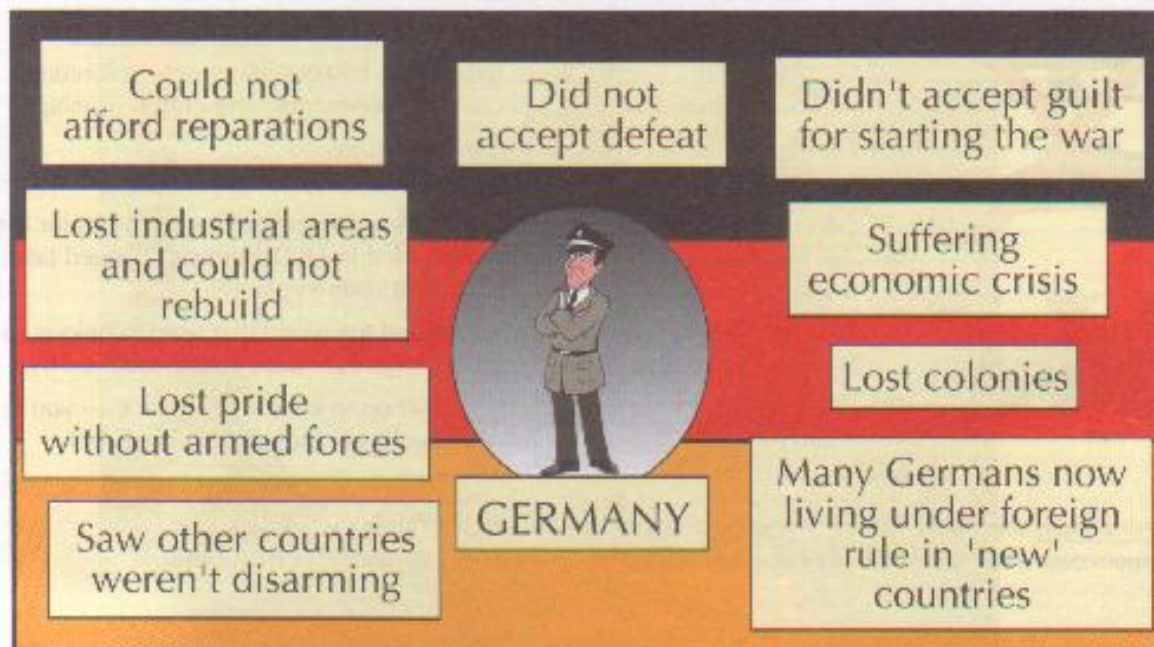
Opinion was divided on the Treaty — there are always two sides to History, and you need to know what the opinions of both sides were and why.

The Treaty pleased very few people

Since the aims of those making the treaty were so different, it was inevitable that not everyone would be happy with the result. Make sure you know why so many people disliked the treaty.

Reactions to the Treaty

The Germans resented the treaty



Problems were building up for the future

Examiners like to see if you can recognise the roots of future problems before they appear.

- 1) Europe couldn't recover properly while countries like Germany remained poor.
- 2) Self-determination* would be difficult in new countries like Poland and Czechoslovakia where many people from different nationalities had been thrown together as an artificial country.
- 3) German resentment would lead to trouble in the future.
- 4) Without Germany, Russia, or the USA in the League of Nations, it'd be hard to keep the peace.

*self-determination = people ruling themselves, e.g. Hungarians being ruled by Hungarians, rather than by the Austrian Emperor.

After the Treaty — there may be trouble ahead

You might find this stuff a bit boring — but you've really got to learn it to get the marks in the Exam. The key here is that you understand the main points and effects of the Treaty of Versailles.

The Other Treaties

The Versailles Treaty was really only about Germany — other Treaties dealt with the rest.

Four more important treaties

TREATY	DEALT WITH	MAIN POINTS
ST. GERMAIN 1919	AUSTRIA	Separated Austria from Hungary. Stopped Austria joining with Germany. Land taken away eg. Bosnia. Made Austria disarm. Created new countries (see map).
TRIANON 1920	HUNGARY	Land taken away eg. Croatia. Made Hungary disarm. Created new countries (see map).
NEUILLY 1919	BULGARIA	Lost some land. Lost access to the sea. Made Bulgaria disarm.
SÈVRES 1920	TURKEY	Lost land - part of Turkey became new MANDATES eg. Syria. Lost control of the Black Sea

- 1) New countries like Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia were formed out of Austria-Hungary.
- 2) Austria and Hungary's separation was important — and the fact that Austria wasn't allowed to join with Germany. Both Austria and Hungary suffered badly after the War.
- 3) The Turks hated The Treaty of Sèvres. Turkish nationalists like Mustafa Kemal resisted the Treaty and forced some later changes — at the Treaty of Lausanne in 1923.
- 4) The Arabs who fought alongside the Allies didn't gain much. They did not achieve self-determination, and the Middle East remained under the influence of Britain and France.

Key results of the treaties

Examiners test if you can draw conclusions from the Treaties.
Look for patterns in all of them.

- 1) All the defeated countries lost land, and had to disarm.
- 2) They were all punished, following the pattern of Versailles.
- 3) Versailles, St Germain, and Trianon were the harshest treaties, and Germany, Austria, and Hungary lost valuable industrial land. Bulgaria wasn't so badly treated because it hadn't played such a big part in the War.
- 4) Countries which were created or increased because of the treaties — like Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, and Poland — were now governing people of many different nationalities.
- 5) Czechoslovakia, for example, had 2 million Germans, as well as Slovaks, Hungarians, Poles, Ukrainians, and over 6 million Czechs.



Making nations is difficult and dangerous

Remember the five key results of the Treaties and the patterns that show how they all followed the example of Versailles. The new countries set up were artificial — and would cause big problems later.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List briefly what the victorious countries wanted from the peace treaties which followed the end of World War One.
- 2) Briefly explain the importance of Wilson's Fourteen Points.
- 3) Why can the Treaty of Versailles be described as a 'compromise'?
- 4) Briefly explain why Germany resented the Treaty of Versailles.
- 5) Why was the Treaty of Versailles said to be 'too harsh' by some people, and 'fair' by others?



Source A: A map showing the land lost by Germany as a result of the Treaty of Versailles in 1919.

Source B: A cartoon published in the German magazine *Simplicissimus* on June 3, 1919.

The three figures dressed in black are the American President, Wilson, the French President, Clemenceau, and the British Prime Minister, Lloyd George. The man with his hands tied is Germany.



Source C: Allied losses during World War One.

Britain:	750,000 soldiers killed;	1,500,000 wounded
France:	1,400,000 soldiers killed;	2,500,000 wounded
Belgium:	50,000 soldiers killed	
Russia:	1,700,000 soldiers killed	
America:	116,000 soldiers killed	

Source D: Part of an interview with the German historian, Wolfgang Mommsen, University of Dusseldorf, 2003.

Mentally, we were not prepared in 1919, to accept defeat. All of a sudden, we are confronted with what the bulk of the Germans considered an entirely unjust treaty. So, resistance against this Treaty was enormous, and I think that the strongest resistance concerned the territorial concessions in the East. Nobody was willing to concede that much territory to the new Polish state. Nobody was willing to accept willingly the system of reparations. The Treaty of Versailles created a political climate in Germany which put all the blame on everything that went sour onto the treaty and the lost war. And that created this climate in which many people then began to think one had to fight the war once again.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer all parts of Question 1.

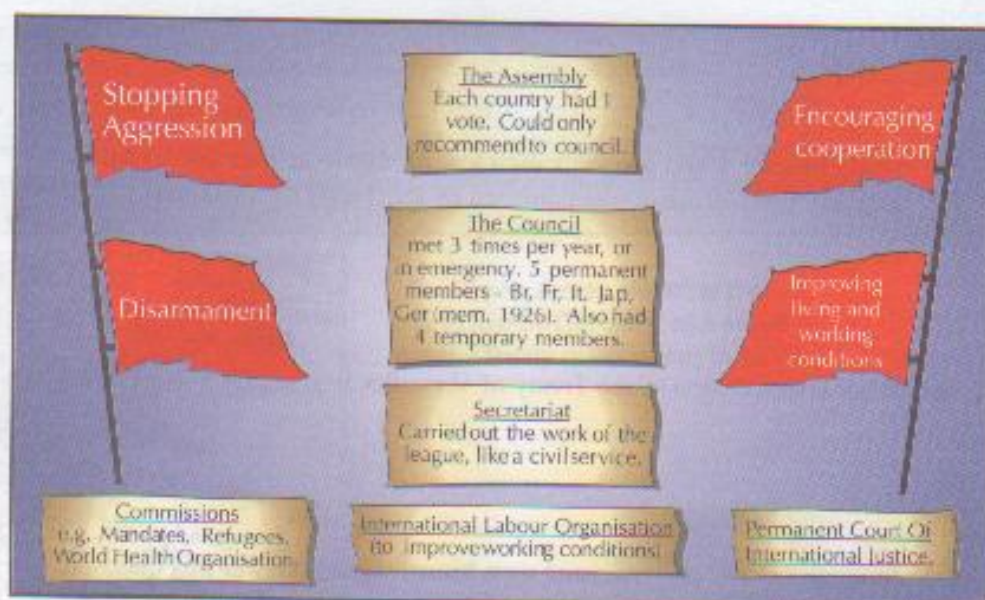
Question 1

- (a) Study **Source A** and **use your own knowledge** to answer this question.
Explain how Germany was punished by the Treaty of Versailles. (4 marks)
- (b) What interpretation of the Treaty of Versailles is given by **Source B**? (5 marks)
- (c) Study **Source C** and **use your own knowledge** to answer this question.
How far does **Source C** explain the harsh treatment of Germany by the Treaty of Versailles? (7 marks)
- (d) Compare **Sources B and D**.
Which of these sources is the most useful to an historian who is trying to explain why Germany resented the Treaty of Versailles? (9 marks)
- (e) Answer this question **using your own knowledge**.
Did the Treaty of Versailles treat Germany unfairly? (15 marks)

THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS

The League of Nations

The League came from the Fourteen Points



- 1) Above are the key facts you need to know about the League of Nations.
- 2) The four flags show the four main aims of the League — stopping aggression, disarmament, encouraging cooperation and improving working and living conditions.
- 3) The rest of the diagram shows how the League was organised and which parts of the organisation were responsible for what.

It was intended to police the world

- 1) The League began work in January 1920.
- 2) There were 42 members to start with, and 59 by the 1930s.
- 3) All the members followed a Covenant of 26 rules.
- 4) The Assembly met once a year, and the Council met more often.
Every member country had a vote.
- 5) The League could warn countries in disputes, apply economic sanctions, then send troops in.
- 6) The League tried to improve social conditions, working on health, slavery, and refugees.
- 7) The Permanent International Court of Justice decided on border-disputes between different countries. Everyone hoped this would avoid another major war.



Policing the nations was a new idea

The main thing you need to know here is how the League was supposed to work. Remember that the League was a good idea but also a new one, so people were unsure how it would work out in the end.

Successes and Failures of the League

The League had some early successes

- 1) It resolved several difficult situations where countries argued over territorial claims — and did it without fighting.
- 2) It solved the dispute in 1921 between Germany and Poland over Upper Silesia; the dispute between Sweden and Finland over the Aaland Islands in 1921, and the conflict when Greece invaded Bulgaria in 1925. These successes gave it a good reputation.
- 3) It also did a lot of good work to help refugees after the War.
- 4) It worked to combat the spread of serious diseases such as leprosy, malaria, and plague — and inoculated against them.
- 5) It fought against slavery, and tried to create better working conditions for people all across the world.



But the League wasn't always successful...

The League failed to sort out the Corfu Incident 1923

The Italian leader Mussolini occupied the Greek island of Corfu in 1923 after the murder of an Italian diplomat.

He demanded financial compensation and an apology from Greece.

The League demanded that the money should be paid to them — but Mussolini got the decision overturned and received both the money and the apology he wanted. The League was seen to be weak.



Don't forget that the League did some good work

The League has had lots of bad press because in the end it failed in its main aim of avoiding another war. But remember the counter argument too — learn the all good things the League did.

Problems with the League of Nations

From the start the League of Nations had real problems.

The USA didn't join the League

Wilson was very ill by this time, and Congress rejected the League. The USA never became a member. Learn these reasons why:—

- 1) The people of America hadn't liked the Versailles treaty, and refused to accept it. They thought the League of Nations was connected to it.
- 2) They believed it would be too expensive — many people wanted to stay out of Europe, and wanted only to worry about USA affairs. This attitude was called isolationism (see p76).
- 3) Many thought that all people should be free under democracy, and weren't willing to be dragged into wars to help countries like Britain and France keep undemocratic colonies.
- 4) Wilson's political enemies wanted to make him unpopular and get rid of him.



The League wasn't powerful enough



1) Britain and France were in charge, but neither country was strong enough after the War to do the job properly.

2) Economic and military sanctions could only work if a powerful nation like the USA was applying them, but most countries were still busy rebuilding after the War.

3) Germany and Russia were not allowed to be members when the League was first formed.

4) The League had no army of its own, and most members didn't want to commit troops to war. Some countries like Italy were quite prepared to ignore the League if they wanted to (see the previous page).

5) The organisation was a disaster — in the Assembly and the Council everyone had to agree before anything could happen so it was hard to reach decisions. The Court of Justice had no powers to make a country act.

Big problems — hardly the Premier League

Many of the League's problems were there from the very beginning. The biggest problem the League had was when the USA didn't join — even though the idea had come from the US President in the first place. This left Britain and France in charge when they were busy trying to rebuild.

More International Agreements

The main agreements 1921-1929

During the 1920s, the political situation seemed to be getting better as countries worked hard to cooperate usefully.

There were a whole string of important agreements over issues of arms reduction and economic aid as well as a treaty where Germany accepted her Western borders.



There seemed to be a real chance of peace

The Washington Conference showed that some countries were determined to begin a process of weapons reduction.

The Geneva Protocol seemed to be strengthening the League.

The Dawes Plan and the Young Plan were helping Germany to recover — this would create increased trade and cooperation.

The Locarno Treaties suggested that Germany was at last prepared to accept the terms of the Versailles Treaty — the Germans joined the League of Nations in 1926.

The Kellogg-Briand Pact seemed to be a step towards lasting peace.

But all of these agreements had problems

- 1) After the Washington Conference, nobody wanted to reduce arms further — the League had failed in its disarmament plans. Defeated countries were angry they had been forced to disarm.
- 2) The benefits of the Dawes and Young Plans were wiped out by the economic Depression which was soon to affect everybody.
- 3) Countries began to make agreements without the League of Nations because they didn't trust it to be effective — France made treaties with several countries because it didn't trust Germany. The Locarno Treaties had nothing to do with the League of Nations.
- 4) Germany agreed to its Western Borders at Locarno, but nothing was said about the East — worrying Czechoslovakia and Poland.
- 5) No-one knew what'd happen if a country broke the Kellogg-Briand Pact.

Everybody agreed — to disagree

Read the facts for you to learn. Don't forget — the main point here is that everybody was willing to agree, but only up to a point. Sooner or later there was going to be a real crisis. Write the page and scribble down the agreements with all the details about them.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) What were the four main aims of the League of Nations?
- 2) What could the League of Nations do to prevent disputes between countries from turning into wars?
- 3) In what ways was the League of Nations successful in the 1920s?
- 4) Why did the USA decide against joining the League of Nations?
- 5) Why could the League of Nations be described as a 'weak' organisation?
- 6) Make a list of the five main problems which existed in international affairs at the end of the 1920s.

Source A: Speech by a leading Republican Senator, Henry Cabot Lodge.

You may call me selfish if you will, but an American I was born, an American I have remained all my life. I can never be anything else but an American, and I must think of the United States first. The United States is the world's best hope, but if you tangle her in the intrigues of Europe, you will destroy her power for good and endanger her very existence. She has great problems of her own to solve, very grim and perilous problems, and a right solution, if we can attain to it, would largely benefit mankind.

Delivered on 12 August, 1919



"Seein' Things" (Brooklyn Eagle, 1919)

Source B: American cartoon, 1919.

Source C: From a school essay on the League of Nations, Santino Olivieri, 1999.

According to Woodrow Wilson even the most powerful nation would not go to war, knowing it would face the opposition of all powerful nations. Germany, Japan and the USA were not members. Therefore the 'community of power' that President Wilson had in mind to use was reduced to three countries — The Soviet Union, France and Britain. However, Britain and France did not employ measures to use force, because they did not want to risk another gruesome war.

Source D: From an essay entitled 'Ineffectiveness at work: The failure of the League of Nations', by the historian Meg Harvey, 2003.

The unifying principle of the League was the shared belief that acts of war were crimes against humanity and that it is in the interest and the duty of every Member State to join in preventing it. While an excellent idea in theory, the League met with repeated problems simply because the nations had not adapted their foreign policy to change from a standpoint that they only had themselves to look after, instead of looking after the interests of the League as a whole.

Exam Question

- I** Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What reasons are given in **Source A** for America's failure to join the League of Nations?
(3 marks)
- (b) What problems are there with using **Source A** as evidence of why America did not join the League of Nations?
(5 marks)
- (c) Study **Source B**.
Explain what you can learn from **Source B** about American attitudes towards the League of Nations.
(4 marks)
- (d) Study **Sources C and D** and use **your own knowledge** to answer this question.
How accurately do **Sources C and D** reflect the reasons for the weakness of the League of Nations?
(8 marks)
- (e) Answer this question using **your own knowledge**.
How far can the League of Nations be described as a 'success' in the 1920s?
(10 marks)

Changes in European Politics

The Peacemakers wanted to establish democracy in Europe, on the model of Britain, France and USA. This means the people vote in elections for the government they want to run the country.

The Italian Democracy soon ran into trouble

FASCISM takes its name from the Roman fascies, the bundle of rods and the axe that were the symbol of authority in ancient Rome



- 1) In countries like Italy most of the people were poor and expected the government to do something to help them.
- 2) Democracy would only survive if people supported the idea and kept voting for it. But the years after the War were difficult in the new democratic countries and people expected quick solutions to their problems — but they didn't come.

The rise of Fascism seemed to be unstoppable

- 1) Between 1919 and 1922 Italy had four different governments, and each found it hard to control a country where many people were very poor.
- 2) The Fascists led by Benito Mussolini began to bully their way into control in many parts of Italy, and when the Socialists called for a general strike in 1922, Mussolini's men terrorised them into calling it off. That made Mussolini very popular.
- 3) In October 1922 Mussolini threatened to march on Rome. This terrified the King Victor Emmanuel III so Mussolini was asked to become Prime Minister — he had the support of the people.
- 4) He changed the voting rules, and in the next elections of 1924 the Fascists swept to power.
- 5) From 1925 he began to change Italy into a dictatorship, where people had to do as they were told. He got rid of other political parties, and became the Head of State — the king had no real power left. Mussolini was now called 'Il Duce' — the leader (see also P. 78).



Fascism was the big danger to democracy — when a strong leader appealed to the people by taking firm military control and rejecting the interference of other countries. Most dictators were cruel tyrants who would bully and even murder their opponents when it suited them.

Many countries were now becoming dictatorships

Democracy was rejected by people who felt betrayed by the Peace Treaties and the poor living conditions since the War finished — instead dictators were coming to power:

HUNGARY 1920 — Miklos Horthy; TURKEY 1924 — Mustafa Kemal; ALBANIA 1928 — Ahmed Zog
POLAND 1926 — Josef Pilsudski; LITHUANIA 1926 — Anatas Smetona.

The same thing happened in Yugoslavia and Bulgaria, and other countries were to follow.

Fascism — a serious threat to democracy

You don't have to learn all these names. You do need to know what was changing in Europe during the 1920's, and why dictators started to take power. Make sure you know why Mussolini was so popular.

The Booming Twenties

...nce and USA. As the 1920s went on, it seemed that there was a real chance that peace would last.

Most countries were getting richer

- 1) The League of Nations was strengthened by the Geneva Protocol, Locarno Pacts and the Kellogg-Briand Pact.
- 2) The Dawes Plan and the Young Plan had reduced German reparations and allowed a longer time period for payment. By 1926, Germany's economy was rebounding, and in 1926 Germany had been accepted into the League of Nations.
- 3) The 'Booming Twenties' saw billions of dollars loaned by the USA to help European countries recover from the effects of the War.



Behind the prosperity were signs of trouble

- 1) The USA was the most prosperous country in the world, with cheap labour, high wages, and mass production of goods. But not all Americans were well off, and many were very low-paid. It was usually the rich and the middle-classes who brought these goods — nearly 50% of Americans were living below the poverty line before the Wall Street Crash.
- 2) Not all countries could afford American goods, and they started to protect their own goods from USA imports by putting duties on them and making the prices higher.
- 3) A lot of Americans were borrowing money and buying shares, and that's only alright if the price of the shares stays high. All these were bad signs.

If the US economy had problems then European countries relying on US loans would also have problems — there would be a chain reaction.

Many European countries had US debts



- 1) Germany in particular had borrowed billions of US dollars in order to rebuild after the war.
- 2) In 1923 it had been unable to make its reparation payments, and France had occupied the Ruhr — its most important industrial area.
- 3) Only the US sponsored Dawes Plan saved the situation.
- 4) German recovery relied heavily on the USA, as did the recovery of many other European countries, including France and Britain.

Here today — gone tomorrow

This was a time of prosperity. But the European countries, especially Germany, were completely dependent on US loans. These were the roots of the Financial Crash of 1929.

The Causes of the Great Depression

The boom years of the 1920s ended very suddenly in 1929.

The world economy was producing too much

You'll need to understand about buying and selling shares. Basically, here's how it works:



1) The boom encouraged borrowing

US companies were selling lots of goods, so people borrowed money to buy shares in them. Ideas like hire purchase allowed people to buy more things.

2) Europe couldn't afford US goods

- 1) European countries couldn't afford US goods, and many of them were protecting their own goods by putting high duties on American imports.
- 2) There was competition from countries like Canada, India, and Japan.
- 3) Many US producers had over-produced. There was too much supply and not enough demand. US farmers now couldn't afford to buy because they couldn't sell their own produce. People in the US either had most consumer goods already or couldn't afford them anyway.
- 4) US companies had no-one to sell their products to — and started to lose money.

The Wall Street Crash 1929

- 1) People rushed to sell shares because they realised their companies were doing badly.
- 2) Wall Street is the trade centre for the USA — by October 1929 the selling was frantic, and prices dropped because people didn't want to buy shares at high prices now.
- 3) Businesses collapsed and thousands of people were ruined — by the end of the month they were selling shares for whatever they could get for them.
- 4) People hoped the Banks would keep the value of shares up artificially, but they couldn't because they were short of money — it had been loaned and not repaid. Many banks failed.
- 5) The Republican government generally didn't believe the State should interfere in the free market economy to help private businesses, and didn't believe the State should interfere in the welfare concerns of the poor and unemployed — they should learn to help themselves.



The Wall Street Crash — a depressing subject

This all sounds pretty complicated, but it's not if you go through it carefully. Make sure you understand how the changes in the market meant that people who bought shares suddenly wanted to sell them.

The Effects of the Great Depression

The Depression was felt all over the world, especially by countries relying on American loans.

The effects of the Depression in the USA

- 1) In 1929 the USA stopped lending money abroad and called in its loans.
- 2) By 1930 nearly 2000 banks collapsed as people rushed to withdraw savings.
- 3) Three years later there were over 12 million people unemployed in the USA.



See section eight for more about the USA

The Depression in Britain and Europe

- 1) Britain was forced to devalue the £ in September 1929 — this made it worth less.
- 2) Britain introduced protection — import tariffs to protect British goods — but it didn't work.
- 3) Within three years there were 3 million people unemployed in Britain, and more than 30 million unemployed in the industrial countries of the West as a whole.
- 4) Britain was struggling to rebuild after the War, and had already suffered a General Strike in 1926, when disputes with the miners led to much wider action.
- 5) Most industrial countries were affected — banks failed, industries struggled, and trade ground to a halt. The least affected country was the USSR, which had a communist system.
- 6) Germany, which had relied on USA loans, was particularly badly affected, with banks failing, exports suffering and unemployment rising. By 1932 there were over 6 million Germans unemployed. In Germany and several other countries democracy got the blame for the bad state of affairs, and that had significant results.

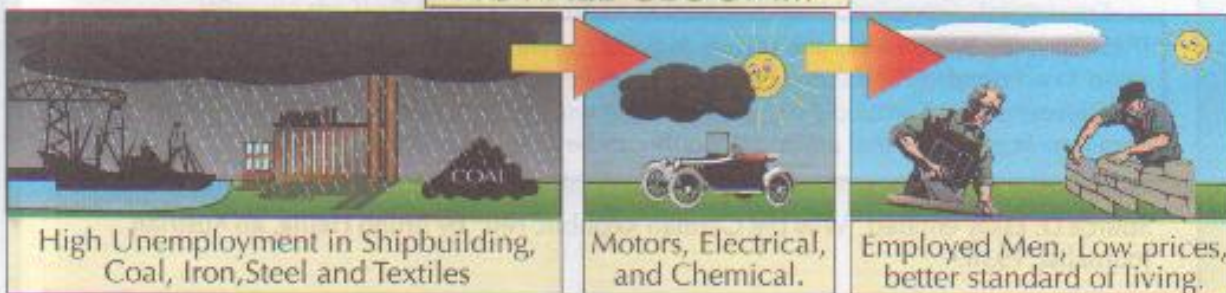
See section five for more about Britain

Some good things came out of the Depression

- 1) Strangely not everybody was worse off. As prices tumbled, many people who were still in work found their standard of living rising. They bought more for less money.
- 2) In Britain especially there were new industries like cars, aircraft, electrical goods which weren't so badly affected — because they used electricity or oil for manufacture rather than coal. Older industries like coal, shipbuilding, and iron and steel (staple industries) suffered badly.



NOT ALL GLOOM...



The Depression wasn't all doom and gloom — but it wasn't much fun

It's really important you know how much things changed because of the economic crisis. Suddenly all of the progress of the 1920s was wiped out, and international tension started to increase again.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Why did the idea of dictatorship become popular in some European countries in the 1920s?
- 2) How did Mussolini establish a dictatorship in Italy?
- 3) How did the German economy become dependent on American loans in the 1920s?
- 4) Make a list of four underlying problems in the world economy which led to the start of the economic depression.
- 5) What was the 'Wall Street Crash' of 1929?
- 6) Describe how the depression affected the USA, Britain and Germany.

Source A: Paul A Gusmorino III, *Main Causes of the Great Depression*, 1996.

A major instability of the American economy had to do with large scale international wealth distribution problems. While America was prospering in the 1920s, European nations were struggling to rebuild themselves after the damage of war. The nations the US had lent money to were in no position to pay off the debts.

In the 1920s the United States was trying 'to be the world's banker, food producer, and manufacturer, but to buy as little as possible from the world in return'. This attempt to have a constantly favourable trade balance could not succeed for long. If the United States would not buy from our European counterparts, then there was no way for them to buy from the Americans, or even to pay interest on US loans. The weakness of the international economy certainly contributed to the Great Depression.



Source B: A photograph of an American former businessman, Fred Bell, selling apples after the Wall Street Crash.

Source C: John J Raskob, *Everybody Ought to be Rich*, June 1929.

If a man saves \$15 a week, and invests in good common stocks, and allows the dividends and rights to accumulate, at the end of twenty years he will have at least \$80,000 and an income from investments of around \$400 a month. He will be rich. And because income can do that, I am firm in my belief that anyone not only can be rich, but ought to be rich.

Source D: Essay entitled "Why the German Republic Fell" by Bruno Heilig, an Austrian journalist, 1938.

When the disparity of condition increases, so does universal suffrage make it easy to seize the source of power, for the greater is the proportion of power in the hands of those... tortured by want and embruted by poverty are ready to sell their votes to the highest bidder or follow the lead of the most blatant demagogue.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What can you learn from **Source A** about the causes of the Great Depression?
(5 marks)
- (b) Study **Sources B and C** and **use your own knowledge** to answer this question.
Why is Fred Bell selling apples in **Source B**?
(6 marks)
- (c) Compare **Sources A and C**.
Which of these sources is the most useful to an historian writing about the causes of the Wall Street Crash?
(7 marks)
- (d) Study **Source D** and **use your own knowledge** to answer this question.
How accurately does **Source D** reflect the reasons behind the rise of dictatorships in Europe during the 1930s?
(12 marks)
- (e) Answer this question **using your own knowledge**.
Why did the Wall Street Crash of 1929 lead to a world economic depression?
(15 marks)

Revision Summary

Time for some questions yet again — just so you know how you're getting on. Remember — this is a big topic, so don't worry if you have problems with these. The main thing is to see what you know and to work out what you don't. Then go back over the section and have another go. Keep at it until you can get every single one of them right — I know it sounds much too hard, but you can do it. It's the only way to win yourself top marks when the Exams come around.

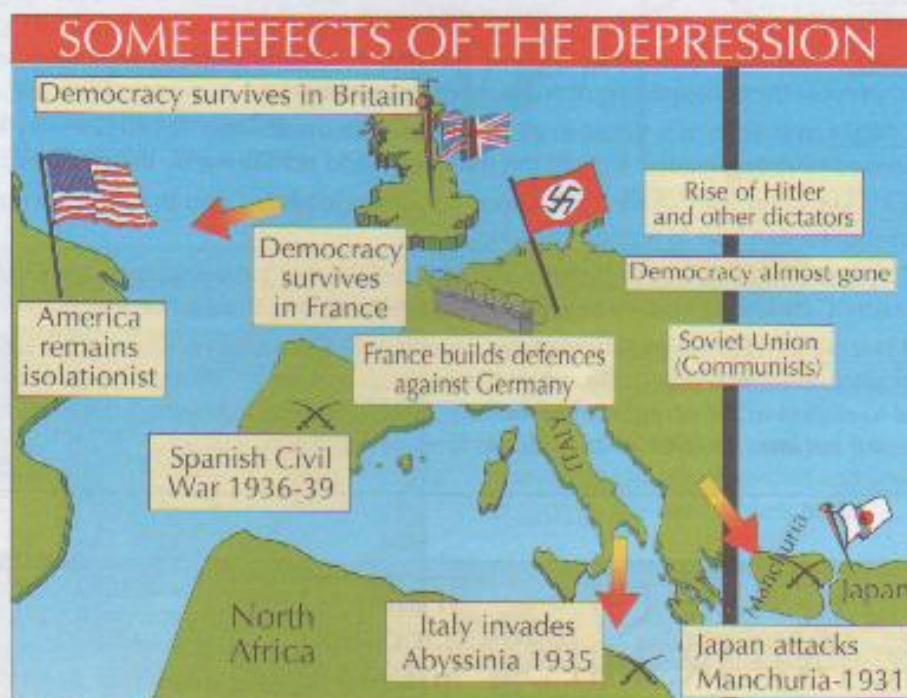
- 1) What were the three main principles that guided the negotiators of the Versailles Treaty in 1919?
- 2) Who were the 'big three' who led the talks at Versailles?
- 3) Which of them wanted Germany punished most?
- 4) Which of Wilson's Fourteen Points actually happened?
- 5) What does self-determination mean?
- 6) Which area was demilitarised? What size armed forces was Germany allowed?
- 7) How much was Germany expected to pay in damages? What were these called?
- 8) What do you understand by the term 'Mandates'?
- 9) Name three new countries which had been set up by Versailles.
- 10) Give at least three reasons why Versailles was not too harsh, and four why it was.
- 11) Name the other Treaties which followed Versailles. Write briefly what each one did.
- 12) Name at least three nationalities living in the new Czechoslovakia.
- 13) List the main aims of the League of Nations. What does Covenant mean?
- 14) What were the weaknesses of the Assembly, the Council, and the Court of Justice?
- 15) Name at least three early successes which the League enjoyed.
- 16) Give four reasons why people in the USA would not accept membership of the League of Nations.
- 17) Why would Britain and France find it difficult to lead the League?
- 18) Which two important nations apart from USA were not members at the beginning?
- 19) Write brief notes to show the importance of the Corfu Incident 1923.
- 20) List all the main international agreements which took place in the 1920s. Write short notes on what each of them tried to do.
- 21) Why did Germany feel angry about the failure of disarmament in the 1920s?
- 22) Write short notes on the weaknesses of Locarno and the Kellogg-Briand Pact.
- 23) What does democracy mean?
- 24) Who were the Fascists? Why were they called that?
- 25) How did Mussolini first come to power?
- 26) Name two other countries that gave up democracy in the 1920s.
- 27) Why were the 'booming twenties' so called?
- 28) When was Germany finally accepted into the League of Nations?
- 29) What is Wall Street? Why did it become so important in 1929?
- 30) Give three reasons why the Depression began.
- 31) Why could most Americans not buy the goods which were produced?
- 32) Which American political party did little to help when the Depression began?
- 33) Write a paragraph about the effects of the Depression on Britain and Germany.
- 34) Give two examples to show that not everybody suffered in the same way.

The Depression Continues

At the start of the 1930's, the Depression got worse and soon became a big political issue

The key political effects of the Depression

- 1) People criticised governments — especially in democracies with regular elections.
- 2) Economic and political problems meant countries turned to dictators.
- 3) Countries like Japan, Italy and later Germany decided to expand into other countries, threatening the peace. The breakdown of trade led to lots of international tension.



The effects of Depression on the major powers

- 1) **USA** — 13 million unemployed meant anger turned on the Republicans under President Hoover — his tax cuts and support for the banks failed to help the situation. The Republicans didn't believe in interfering with business or welfare, and they lost the Presidency in 1932 (see P. 164).
- 2) **GERMANY** — The new Weimar government broke down between 1929-1933. People turned to groups like Hitler's Nazis who promised strong government and a better life (Section 6).
- 3) **ITALY** — Mussolini wanted to take people's minds off the economic problems by increasing the power of Italy abroad. He wanted to create a new Roman Empire (see P. 78).
- 4) **BRITAIN** — Democracy survived but there were 3 million unemployed (see section five). Extreme groups like Oswald Mosley's 'Blackshirt' fascist party became popular in some areas after 1931.
- 5) **FRANCE** — The effects of the Depression hit France later than most countries, when they could no longer sell luxury goods like wine. There were over 1 million unemployed, and extreme political groups began to become more important there too.
- 6) **JAPAN** — Goods like silk wouldn't sell and Japan's economy was badly affected, so Japan decided to take over other countries. The army had a very strong influence there (see P. 77).

A tunnel of despair — and no one could see the light

There you are then; the key effects of the Depression on the major powers — and it's really important you learn the lot, since this whole section of the syllabus depends on knowing them.

The Rise of the Dictators

Poor conditions in Europe made people want stronger governments — the 1930's saw the rise of more dictators, and increasing international tension.

Factors in the rise of the dictators

- 1) LOCARNO had only settled the Western Borders of Germany. The borders on the East were vulnerable if Germany wanted to expand — people wanted strong leaders to protect them.
- 2) DEPRESSION still affected most countries, causing widespread unemployment and poverty. People welcomed strong governments who could put things right.
- 3) DEMOCRACY was often blamed for the bad conditions — democratic governments seemed unable to prevent them happening or to improve the situation.
- 4) COMMUNISM was seen as a threat to all of Europe after the Russian Revolution in 1917 — people looked to strong leaders to fight the threat of world revolution by the workers.
- 5) ISOLATIONISM continued — the USA stayed out of world affairs, and Britain and France weren't strong enough to stand up to foreign dictators.
- 6) FRANCE was still suspicious of Germany and was building strong defences along the Maginot Line — many Germans felt they needed a strong leader against this French threat.
- 7) DISARMAMENT FAILED — members of the League of Nations had no intention of reducing their armed forces further, and especially not as tension began to grow. When Germany asked all countries to disarm to the same level as them in 1932, everyone refused. The Germans saw this as unfair and became determined to build up their armed forces again.



Dictatorship — simply irresistible

Europe was full of tension because of the economic crisis and the threat of war that still came from German anger over Versailles. People were afraid that no-one was in control, so they turned to dictators.

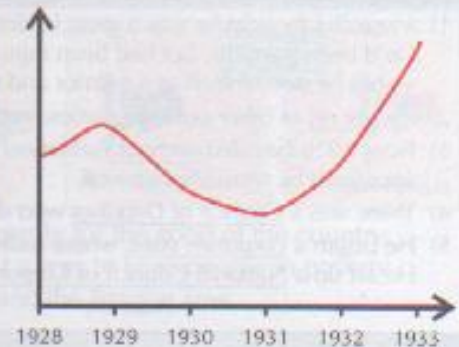
Japanese Expansion

On the other side of the world, Japan had suffered badly during the Depression.

Japan was seen as a threat by the USA

- 1) Japan had been at war with Russia in 1904, and its industries had grown in the East while Europe was busy fighting World War I.
- 2) The USA was worried about Japanese competition, and tried to limit its power and reduce the size of its navy.
- 3) When the Depression wrecked Japanese industries, the military leaders and business interests in Japan called for military expansion to strengthen the country.

The Rise of Production in Japan



Japanese aggression led to the Manchurian Crisis



- 1) Japan had a large army and navy. Since 1905, it had controlled the territory of the South Manchurian Railway.
- 2) In September 1931, it used the excuse of a disturbance to take Mukden and send its troops to overrun the rest of Manchuria.

The League of Nations failed to stop Japan

The League of Nations sent Lord Lytton to assess the situation. He produced a report, which said the Japanese had been wrong, but the League didn't do anything else to end the crisis.

This was the first major challenge for the League of Nations, and the whole world saw it fail to confront the Japanese aggression.

The League was weakened

- 1) Japan refused to accept the report and withdrew from the League in 1933.
- 2) The Japanese then took Jehol and pretended to give Manchuria independence with a weak ruler called Po Yi in charge — so that they could control him.



- 3) Dictators like Hitler and Mussolini saw the obvious weakness of the League.
- 4) Japan signed a treaty with Germany in 1936 and in 1937 started to invade China — again the League did nothing to stop it.

The League of Nations — a drama out of a crisis...

Japan's suffering in the Depression made them look for ways to get stronger — by expanding and attacking other countries. The League's failure to deal with Japan, encouraged others to try the same.

Italy under Mussolini

Another country adding to international tension was Italy. Mussolini came to power in 1922. He then began to turn the country into a dictatorship (see P. 68).

Complete control of Italy

- 1) Mussolini thought he was a great leader who would bring back the glories of the Roman Empire. He'd been a soldier, but had been injured and spent the rest of World War I as a reporter — but he saw himself as a warrior and was influenced by the Manchurian Crisis.
- 2) He got rid of other political parties, and arrested Communist leaders.
- 3) From 1926 he ruled without Parliament. He used a Fascist Grand Council, whose members were appointed by Mussolini himself.
- 4) There was a Council of Deputies who did what the Grand Council told it.
- 5) He began a corporate state, where individual people weren't as important as the good of Italy as a whole. He set up a National Council of Corporations to run Italy's economic affairs.

Mussolini's government achieved some good

It's easy to criticise dictators like Mussolini for being cruel and ruthless. He was — but it's important for you to remember that he also got many things done, when the previous governments had very little control at all.

- 1) Under his rule, the wheat harvest doubled.
- 2) He reclaimed the Pontine Marshes — a large area — and drained it to build houses.
- 3) He started a massive road-building programme which connected many parts of the country together.
- 4) Railways were electrified, and many new houses, schools and hospitals were built.
- 5) He ended a long-standing argument with the Catholic Church by signing the Lateran Treaty in 1929, allowing the Pope to rule over the Vatican City, an independent state in the heart of Rome.

Mussolini was ruthless and cowardly at times

- 1) Mussolini had used thugs and terror to win power, but had also been ready to run away if the March on Rome had failed (see P. 68).
- 2) Some sources said in 1924 that he had murdered Matteotti, a leading opposition politician. When people accused him of the crime, he is said to have lost his nerve and nearly given up there and then.
- 3) He used a harsh secret police called the OVRA against his opponents.
- 4) He wanted Italy's population to be bigger so there would be more men to be soldiers and more people to rule over. He put a special tax on single men to encourage people to marry and have larger families.
- 5) Later, he allowed the persecution of Jews in Italy, under Hitler's influence.

Mussolini invaded Abyssinia in 1935

- 1) Italy had been defeated by Abyssinia in 1896 and the Italians wanted revenge.
- 2) Abyssinia (now Ethiopia) was well-positioned for Italy to add to her lands in Africa.
- 3) Mussolini had seen Japan get away with the Manchurian invasion despite the League of Nations' threats.
- 4) He dreamed of making Italy a great Empire again.



The invasion of Abyssinia began in October 1935

The League of Nations imposed economic sanctions — but delayed banning oil exports in case the USA didn't support them. Britain and France didn't close the Suez canal to Italian ships — so supplies got through anyway. The League continued to argue, but by May 1938 Italy had conquered all of Abyssinia.

The results of the invasion were...

- 1) The League of Nations had failed to protect Abyssinia — its credibility was destroyed.
- 2) Italy became more confident — Mussolini and Hitler agreed the Rome-Berlin Axis in 1936 and in 1937 Italy joined Japan and Germany in the Anti-Comintern Pact. Italy also attacked Albania in 1938, and signed the Pact of Steel with Hitler in 1939.

Civil War in Spain

Long-term problems in Spain mixed with the tension of the 1930s to cause a Civil War which soon involved other countries.

Spain had always been a divided country

- 1) The Church and the Army dominated the Government.
- 2) The poor hated the rich, so two other groups were able to find followers — the Communists and Anarchists.
- 3) Communists believed that everybody should work together equally for the good of the country. Anarchists believed that all governments were wrong, and just a way to keep people in poverty.
- 4) Some parts of Spain wanted independence — like Catalonia and the Basque area.



The political situation changed in 1930

In the 1920s General Primo de Rivera ruled like a dictator with the cooperation of the King — by 1930 the army had had enough and forced the King to give up his throne. A Second Republic was set up to rule without a King.

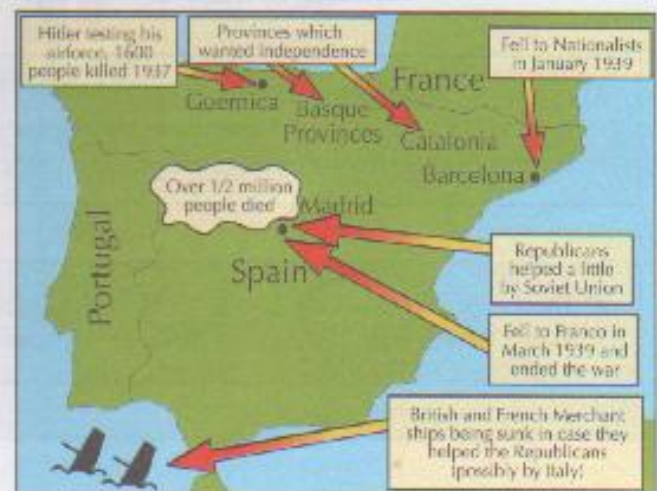
The army soon grew tired of the Republic

The new Government faced the problems of the Depression. Basques and Catalans demanded independence, workers staged riots, and a new party — the Spanish Fascists (called FALANGE) — emerged. In 1936 another group took over — the Popular Front. The army didn't like this, and in July General Francisco Franco helped by the fascists, brought soldiers over from Morocco after a long war to attack the Popular Front. Franco's side were called Nationalists.



The Civil War set Republicans against Nationalists

- 1) The Left-Wing Republicans wanted help from the League of Nations — none came.
- 2) The Soviet Union sent some help, and an International Brigade developed, where volunteers from all over the world went to Spain to help the Popular Front.
- 3) But Italy and Germany joined in on the side of the Right-Wing Nationalists, and 1600 people were killed at the town of Guernica by a German warplane attack.
- 4) The Nationalists were better organised and better fighters, and when Madrid fell to Franco in March 1939, the War was over — Franco became dictator.



The Spanish Civil War — a disaster waiting to happen

Make a list of the divisions in Spanish society that made Civil War possible. See if you can remember the causes of the Spanish Civil War. Remember which other European countries got involved.

The Failure of the League of Nations

The League of Nations had failed to prevent war or solve international disputes — it's important to see why the idea didn't work.

The League *didn't* achieve its original aims

1) To prevent aggression.

2) To encourage co-operation.

3) To work towards disarmament.

4) To prevent a major war breaking out again.



The League did have some success in improving the lives of ordinary people around the world — combating slavery and poor working conditions — but this wasn't its main purpose.

Opinions in defence of the League of Nations

1) Once the USA pulled out, Britain and France had a very difficult task — when they weren't that strong themselves. You can't enforce sanctions if nobody else wants to do it.

2) The Depression made the political situation tougher worldwide — it was nobody's fault.

3) No organisation could have stopped leaders like Mussolini or Hitler peacefully. Italy and Germany were members themselves, and could have worked harder for the League instead of against it. The same was true of Japan.

4) The League of Nations had to defend the treaty of Versailles made after World War I which many countries thought was unfair.

You must learn the counter argument

It's easy to knock the League of Nations because it failed to prevent war, but ranting on and on about how useless it was will only get you so far in the exam. Learn the four points above in its defence. The League could have worked had these circumstances been different. Failure was not inevitable.

The Failure of the League of Nations

Opinions against the League of Nations

- 1) The Manchurian crisis was the turning point — the League should have resisted Japan.
- 2) Too many members didn't keep to the rules. When they were attacked for it, they simply left the League, e.g. Germany and Japan 1933, Italy 1937.
- 3) Britain and France didn't lead strongly, and were often very slow to do things.
- 4) Members of the League who could have opposed aggression didn't want to risk a war.
- 5) Ambitious members like Hitler and Mussolini weren't dealt with strongly enough.
- 6) A US-President had invented the idea but the USA didn't even join.
- 7) Instead of co-operation, the League allowed the old system of Alliances to creep back — all the main members were guilty of making secret alliances.

Pros

- Early minor successes in preserving peace between minor powers
- Helped European rebuilding and aided refugees of the war
- Improved health & labour conditions around the world
- USA supported it with loans
- Kellogg-Briand Pact 1928: made a general statement against war
- Provided the groundwork for the United Nations



Cons

- Rise of dictators
- Manchurian crisis 1931
- Failure of disarmament conference 1932
- Germany and Japan left 1933
- Abyssinian crisis 1935
- Rome-Berlin Axis 1936
- German aggression
- Italy left 1937
- USSR left 1939
- Spanish civil war 1936-9
- Powerless to prevent World War II

For and against — now you be the judge

OK this is really important stuff for you to learn — it'll get you loads of easy marks for any Exam essay on the League of Nations. Make sure you know the League's original aims and can give your own verdict on whether the League can be blamed for its problems, or whether they were unavoidable.

The Causes of the Second World War (1)

By the mid-1930s, it was clear that tensions were running high in Europe.

The atmosphere in Europe was tense



- 1) All the League of Nations' attempts at disarmament had failed.
- 2) Democracy had collapsed in much of Europe. Several countries were led by aggressive leaders who wanted to take over new territories, and weren't worried about defying the League.
- 3) Germany still resented its treatment after the First World War.
- 4) France had never stopped distrusting Germany.
- 5) Britain didn't want to get dragged into a war, whatever the reason.

The key figure in Europe now was Adolf Hitler — German leader since 1933. He wanted to reverse the results of the Versailles Treaty, and bring all the former German peoples back under his control.

In March 1936 Hitler sent troops into the Rhineland

- 1) The Rhineland had been demilitarised by the Treaty of Versailles. Germany had accepted this by signing the Locarno Treaties in 1925.
- 2) But Hitler decided to gamble. The League of Nations was busy with the Italian invasion of Abyssinia.
- 3) Russia and France had recently made a treaty against future German attacks. Hitler claimed that this threatened Germany, and that he should therefore be allowed to put troops on Germany's borders.
- 4) Hitler believed many people in Britain felt the Treaty of Versailles had been unfair — so Britain wouldn't get involved. But he was unsure how France would react.
- 5) The German forces had orders to pull out immediately if the French army moved in. But nothing happened. The League of Nations condemned the act, Britain protested but refused to act and France was in the middle of an election campaign — so none of the politicians wanted to be responsible for starting a war with Germany.

Hitler had broken part of the Treaty of Versailles and no one had tried to stop him.

The late 1930s — storm clouds gathering

Start by learning the five factors causing international tension during the 1930s.

Then write a list of the main reasons why Hitler got away with sending troops into the Rhineland.

The Causes of the Second World War (2)

Hitler then turned his attention to Austria

- 1) Hitler wanted unification (Anschluss) between Austria and Germany. He believed they belonged together.
- 2) In 1934 a Nazi Revolt in Austria failed, after Mussolini sent troops to the Italian border to warn Hitler against sending his own forces in.
- 3) But by 1936, Hitler and Mussolini were allies — and in 1937 Mussolini told the Austrian Chancellor Schuschnigg that Italy would not defend Austria from attack.
- 4) Hitler encouraged Austrian Nazis to stage demonstrations and protests — and Schuschnigg's government soon couldn't control them.
- 5) In February 1938, Hitler gave a list of demands to Schuschnigg. He demanded that an Austrian Nazi called Seyss-Inquart should be made Minister of the Interior, controlling the police.
- 6) Instead, Schuschnigg decided to call a national vote (plebiscite) on whether Austria should remain independent. But Hitler couldn't be sure he'd get the result he wanted.
- 7) Hitler demanded Schuschnigg's resignation — or Germany would invade. Schuschnigg couldn't take the risk — he and his cabinet resigned, except for Seyss-Inquart.
- 8) In March 1938 Seyss-Inquart invited the German army into Austria to "restore order." On March 15, Hitler entered Vienna to proclaim the Greater German Reich. Austria and Germany were united.

Hitler pressurized Czechoslovakia in 1938

When the Western powers didn't stop Hitler in Austria, the Czechoslovakian Government became afraid that Hitler would soon try to take over the largely German-speaking Sudetenland.

- 1) Czechoslovakia's borders had been set by the Treaty of Versailles. The Sudetenland was a part of Czechoslovakia which had a large population of Germans — about 3.5 million.
- 2) The Czech leader, Benes, asked Britain and France for support if Hitler invaded. The French had guaranteed the Czech borders in the Locarno Treaties of 1925, and so they agreed.
- 3) Britain also agreed, but the British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain asked Hitler if he planned to attack Czechoslovakia. Hitler gave him his "word of honour" that Czechoslovakia had "nothing to fear".
- 4) But soon Hitler claimed that the Germans in the Sudetenland were being discriminated against by the Czech government. The Nazi party organised demonstrations in the Sudetenland demanding that the area should become part of Germany.
- 5) In May 1938 Hitler threatened to go to war. Since Czechoslovakia had promises of support from Britain, France and the USSR (who were also worried about Hitler) Benes was ready to fight.
- 6) But Chamberlain and the French Prime Minister Daladier put pressure on the Czechs to give concessions to Hitler to avoid a war. Even so, war seemed inevitable.

Hitler simply ignored the Treaty of Versailles

With the League of Nations now irrelevant, no one was willing to risk war to stop German expansion. Make sure you have the sequence of events clear in your head before you go on.

The Causes of the Second World War (3)

Britain and France protested to Germany

- 1) People in France and Britain prepared for war — gas masks were issued, and air-raid shelters were built in preparation.
- 2) During September 1938, Chamberlain flew twice to Germany, where he met with Hitler to negotiate.
- 3) But Hitler kept changing his demands, and set a date of 1 October to "rescue" the Sudeten Germans. Chamberlain said this was unreasonable, and the British Navy was mobilised ready for war.
- 4) Then on 29 September Hitler invited Chamberlain, Daladier and Mussolini to a conference in Munich. Mussolini put forward a plan (really written by the German Foreign Office).
- 5) After discussions the four leaders produced the Munich Agreement. This gave the Sudetenland to Germany but guaranteed the rest of Czechoslovakia. The Czechs and the USSR were not invited to the conference. Chamberlain flew home to a hero's welcome after seemingly preventing a war. He claimed the agreement meant "peace for our time," but some people weren't so sure.

The Munich Agreement was an example of appeasement

Britain's foreign policy during the 1930s was about appeasement — giving aggressive countries like Germany or Italy what they wanted in order to avoid a major war.

At Munich, Chamberlain gave in to Hitler's demands to keep the peace. He appeared to believe Hitler's promises that he wouldn't try to take more of Czechoslovakia. But the Czechs weren't even consulted. The USSR was horrified when Britain and France gave in to Hitler.

Appeasement seems foolish now, but at the time it was popular.

- 1) No one in Britain wanted a war, and many people felt the Treaty of Versailles had been unfair to Germany — so Hitler should be allowed to redress the balance.
- 2) Many British politicians feared Communism and the USSR much more than Hitler — they wanted Germany as a buffer between Britain and the USSR.
- 3) Britain was also economically weak and its armed forces weren't very strong. Chamberlain speeded up British rearmament after Munich — some historians say that he gave in to Hitler at Munich in order to buy time for rearming. But other historians say Munich was a big mistake.

Appeasement — 'Peace in our Time'

Make sure you know what appeasement was. With hindsight appeasement might look like a really bad idea, but make sure you know why Chamberlain thought it was the best plan — it's not clean cut.

The Causes of the Second World War (4)

Chamberlain was welcomed as a hero when he came home. In a poll soon after, over 90% of British people asked said they didn't trust Hitler, but they were glad there wouldn't be a war.

In March 1939 Hitler took over the rest of Czechoslovakia

- 1) After losing the Sudetenland, Czechoslovakia began to descend into anarchy. Slovakia began to demand independence.
- 2) Hitler persuaded the Czech president to allow German troops in to "restore order".
- 3) Britain and France did nothing — but it was clear that the appeasement policy had failed. Hitler had broken his promises and taken non-German lands.



The USSR made a pact with Hitler

- 1) The Soviet Union had joined the League of Nations in 1934, and had also signed a treaty with France in 1935 against Hitler — mainly because Stalin was suspicious of the Fascists.
- 2) But the USSR never trusted the French, and couldn't understand why nobody stood up to Hitler earlier. After Munich, Stalin decided to negotiate with Germany in order to protect the USSR.



- 3) The NAZI-SOVIET PACT was signed in August 1939. The USSR and Germany agreed not to attack each other. They also planned to carve up another country — Poland.
- 4) If Germany invaded Poland, the USSR would get Latvia, Estonia, Finland, and East Poland — but Hitler never really intended to let them keep those areas (see P. 117 and P. 149).

On 1st September 1939 Hitler invaded Poland. This was too much — Britain and France ordered him to leave. He ignored them and Britain declared war on Germany on 3rd September 1939.

The road to the Second World War

These are the three key areas you need to cover in your revision of this topic.

- 1) Make sure you learn the final steps to war between 1936 and 1939 — the sequence of events is very important and you should practise the different names and spellings.
- 2) Be clear on the reasons why nobody stopped Hitler sooner — e.g. the weakness of the League of Nations, the policy of appeasement and the secret plotting of the USSR.
- 3) Remember the long-term causes of tension during the 1920s and 1930s — think about the problems caused by the Versailles Treaty and the League of Nations, and the consequences of the worldwide economic problems during the Depression.

Twenty years on — Europe was at war again

This is really important stuff. Remember — there were long-term causes as well as the short-term ones. Test your knowledge of Hitler's actions against the Rhineland, Austria, Czechoslovakia, and Poland.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Name five countries that had dictatorships between the end of the First World War and the beginning of the Second World War.
- 2) Why did the Japanese invasion of Manchuria in 1931 make the League of Nations look weak?
- 3) Give three methods used by Mussolini to get rid of political opponents in Italy.
- 4) Why was the Munich Agreement in 1938 so popular in Britain?
- 5) In what ways was Germany involved in the Spanish Civil War in 1937?
- 6) Briefly explain the reasons for the Nazi-Soviet pact in 1939.

Source A: An interpretation of the response to German troops entering the Rhineland in 1936, by a modern historian.

Britain generally supported the view that Nazi Germany was only going into her own "backyard" and that this section of Versailles was not needed to be enforced in the mid-1930's. It was believed that Germany was behaving in a reasonable and understandable manner. Therefore, no action was taken against Nazi Germany, despite Hitler's later comment that the march into the Rhineland had been the most nerve-racking 48 hours of his life.



Source B: An interpretation of international relations in a British cartoon from 1936.

The writing on the carpet reads:
Rearmament, Rhineland
Fortification and Danzig.

Source C: Neville Chamberlain, speaking in a radio broadcast in 1938.

How horrible, fantastic, incredible, it is that we should be digging trenches and trying on gas-masks here because of a quarrel in a far-away country between people of whom we know nothing! I would not hesitate to pay even a third visit to Germany, if I thought it would do any good.

Source D: An interpretation of the Munich Agreement written in 1960. The author worked on a newspaper in 1938.

Since history cannot - thank God - repeat itself, one cannot produce proof to support one's opinions, but I am firmly convinced that, had Chamberlain stood firm, Hitler would either have climbed down or would have begun war with far less support from his own people than he had a year later. The British forces, one is told, were scandalously unprepared, and were able to make good some of their defects during that year.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) Explain what you can learn from **Source A** about German troops marching into the Rhineland in 1936.

(5 marks)

- (b) Compare **Source A** and **Source B**.
Do they agree about Hitler's actions in the mid-1930s?

(6 marks)

- (c) How reliable is **Source D** as evidence about the Munich Agreement?

Explain your answer using **Source D** and **your own knowledge**.

(9 marks)

- (d) **Sources C and D** give different interpretations of the Munich Agreement of 1938.

Why do you think these interpretations are so different?

Explain your answer using **Sources C and D** and **your own knowledge**.

(10 marks)

- (e) Use **your own knowledge** to explain the causes of the Second World War.

(15 marks)

Revision Summary

Yes it's time for some more revision questions — just what you need to test your knowledge of this section. This is a really important section because it sits right in the thick of the action. All the problems after the First World War and then during the Depression suddenly came to a head. The key for you is to make sure you can see all of the different causes of the Second World War. Don't forget — it wasn't just one thing, but a whole combination of long and short term causes. To check how much you really know, work through these questions. Remember — you need to practise them till you know all the answers by heart. It's the only way to make sure you can get top marks.

- 1) Name two dictators who came to power in the wake of the Depression.
- 2) What was the name of the German Government at the time of the Depression?
- 3) Name the Fascist group which was growing in popularity in Britain from 1931 on.
- 4) Give two political reasons why the Depression affected Europe.
- 5) List as many reasons as you can why Dictators came to power in the 1930's.
- 6) Why was Japan seen as such a threat by the USA in the 1930s?
- 7) Why was Manchuria so important to the Japanese? What effects did the invasion have?
- 8) Name the man who wrote a report on the Manchurian Invasion.
Why was the League of Nations unwilling to stop Japan?
- 9) What did Japan go on to do in 1936 and 1937?
- 10) Write a few notes to explain the Fascist Grand Council and the Council of Deputies in Italy.
What was the Corporate State?
- 11) List five good points and five bad points about Mussolini's rule.
- 12) Why did Mussolini invade Abyssinia in 1935? Who signed the Anti-Comintern Pact?
- 13) Name the two provinces in Spain that wanted independence.
What was the name given to the Spanish Fascists? Who led the Nationalists?
- 14) Which countries helped the Nationalists? Who sent help to the Republicans?
- 15) Give seven reasons why the League of Nations could be said to have failed during the 1930s.
- 16) Give four arguments in defence of the League.
- 17) What were the main aims of Adolf Hitler in 1933?
- 18) Where did Germany send troops in 1936? Give three reasons why nobody stopped them.
- 19) What was the name given to the joining of Germany and Austria? How did Hitler achieve it?
- 20) Name the area of Czechoslovakia that Hitler wanted in 1938.
- 21) What was appeasement? Give three reasons why it was a popular policy at the time.
- 22) At which Conference did Chamberlain agree to allow Hitler to take the whole of the Sudetenland?
What did Hitler do in March 1939?
- 23) Why did the Soviet Union make an agreement with Germany in 1939?
- 24) What happened after Hitler invaded Poland in September 1939?
- 25) List at least six possible long-term and short-term causes of World War II.

Support for Socialism in 1900

By 1900, many working-class people felt they weren't represented by the established political parties. About this time new organisations were starting to be heard: the Labour Party and the trade unions.

Socialist ideas were more popular than ever

Socialism says that big businesses should be owned by the Government. The fancy term for this is "nationalisation". It also says that society should be organised in a way that deliberately takes care of working-class people as well as the middle and upper classes. Various socialist groups had been set up in the nineteenth century.

- 1) The Social Democratic Federation was set up by H.M. Hyndman in 1884. It supported socialist reforms. The SDF thought violent revolution was the only way to achieve change. At first it appealed mainly to middle-class people, but became more popular with the working class.
- 2) The Fabian Society was founded in 1884 too. It was an intellectual group including the writers H.G. Wells and George Bernard Shaw. The Fabians didn't support the idea of revolution. They wanted to spread socialist ideas gradually through elections.
- 3) James Keir Hardie founded the Scottish Labour Party in 1888. This turned into the Independent Labour Party in 1893, and finally became the Labour Party in 1906.
- 4) Trade unions were organisations of workers that argued for better pay and working conditions. They had very wide support amongst working-class people. In the 1880s trade unions organised successful strikes by the gasworkers, match girls, and dockers. This gave them added political clout.

More working-class men had the vote

- 1) The Ballot Act was passed in 1872. It made voting in general elections secret — so it was harder for corrupt politicians to bully people into voting for them.
- 2) The 1872 Reform Act gave all male householders the vote.
- 3) The 1884 Reform Act had given the vote to all male householders in towns who paid rates. In the country, all men who paid £12 a year in rates (or more) got the vote too.

There were now far more working-class men who had the vote.
A party which supported the working-class had a better chance of success than ever.

Don't forget it was 1918 before all working-class men had the vote.

Working-class men wanted a party that supported their views

- 1) Working-class people were concerned about problems like unemployment and poverty. (see P.30)
- 2) The Liberals and Conservatives still largely represented the views of the middle and upper classes. Some working-class voters began to believe that voting Liberal or Conservative was not going to bring a swift end to their problems.
- 3) All the socialist groups were closer to working class concerns than the Liberals and Conservatives. They needed to combine forces to have any success in a General Election.

This might seem a bit off the point — but it's vital background

Three big points about 1900 here: 1) There were lots of groups around with socialist ideas; 2) More working-class men had the vote; 3) These men wanted to elect a Government which would improve their lives.

The Labour Party

This might look like a long list of dates. That's because it is a long list of dates — showing the rise of the Labour Party over the first half of the twentieth century. And yes, it is worth learning.

Labour didn't get into government until 1924

- 1888 The Scottish Labour Party was formed by James Keir Hardie.
- 1892 James Keir Hardy and 2 independent candidates were elected to Parliament with the support of trade unions, the Social Democratic Federation, and the Fabian Society.
- 1893 The Independent Labour Party was founded at a conference in Bradford, by delegates from trade unions, the Social Democratic Federation, the Fabian Society and the Scottish Labour Party.

The Independent Labour Party wanted:

- 1) an eight-hour working day
- 2) sickness benefits
- 3) unemployment benefits
- 4) widow's pensions
- 5) help for the infirm

- 1900 The Labour Representation Committee was formed by some unions, the SDF, the Fabians and the ILP. The aim was to find ways to get Labour MPs into Parliament to deal with the practical problems faced by working people in Britain. Ramsay MacDonald was its first secretary.
- 1906 29 Labour MPs were elected to Parliament. 'Independent' was dropped from the party name.
- 1909 The Osborne Judgement said that union money could not be used to fund the Labour Party. This was a blow to Labour MPs, who were not usually as rich as Liberal and Conservative MPs, and relied on financial help from the unions so they could take time out from their normal jobs.
- 1911 For the first time MPs got a salary — of £400 a year. Many more Labour supporters could now think about becoming MPs.
- 1913 The Trade Union Act said that unions were allowed to raise money to support the Labour party. But only if a majority of members voted to do it, and individuals were allowed to 'contract out' of paying (i.e. choose not to pay if they didn't want to).
- 1918 57 Labour MPs were elected.
- 1924 Ramsay MacDonald became the first Labour Prime Minister. The Government was a coalition — Labour was supported in Parliament by the Liberals. The Government only lasted 10 months.
- 1929 Labour won 288 seats in the General Election. It was now the largest party in Parliament, but didn't have an overall majority — it still needed Liberal support to form a Government.
- 1945 The first completely Labour Government was elected. Clement Attlee was the Prime Minister.

Labour tended to win support from people who had voted Liberal before. As Labour became more successful, the Liberal Party was going into a sharp decline.

Lots and lots of dates — learn them now

It looks like loads to learn, but in fact this page is easier to learn than most of the others in this book. It's just a list like any other. All you've got to do is sit down and learn it.

Build-up to the General Strike 1919-1926

As the Labour Party was growing, so were the trade unions — especially after the First World War. They became much more active in trying to get better pay and conditions by holding strikes.

Unions were in a strong position after World War One

During the First World War (1914–1918), the unions cooperated with the Government. Between 1914 and 1918, there were hardly any strikes. Wages in industry were good. Membership of many unions went up. High wages and membership strengthened the unions. After the war there was less pressure to avoid strikes — and disputes over pay began again.

- 1) The police and railway workers held successful strikes in 1918 and 1919.
- 2) Total union membership in 1920 was 8 million.
- 3) Two new unions were founded — the Amalgamated Engineering Union in 1920, and the Transport and General Workers' Union in 1921. Both became extremely large and powerful.



Trouble in the coal industry led to the General Strike

During the 1920s there were constant disputes between the coal miners and mine owners, over pay and the length of the working day. These disputes eventually led to the General Strike.

- 1) During the First World War the coal industry was nationalized — the Government took over ownership and control of the mines.
- 2) In 1919 a Royal Commission was appointed to decide whether or not to return the mines to private ownership. The Commission recommended that the Government should keep the coal mines. Lloyd George's coalition Government wasn't keen and returned the mines to private ownership in 1921.
- 3) People were beginning to use gas, oil and electricity more than coal. Also mines in Germany and Poland were using efficient modern machinery, which produced more coal more quickly and more cheaply. The British mines still relied mainly on digging with picks and shovels. Customers couldn't afford British coal, and the mines became less and less profitable.
- 4) The new private owners announced a cut in wages and longer working hours for the miners. The miners refused to accept this and went on strike. Neither side was flexible or ready to negotiate.
- 5) The miners union was in a Triple Alliance with the transport workers and railwaymen. When they went on strike they asked for support from these allies. The transport workers and railwaymen thought the miners should have tried harder to negotiate, and refused to join in with the strike on 21st April 1921. This day became known as 'Black Friday'.
- 6) The miners carried on with their strike even without the support of the Triple Alliance. The strike was a failure as eventually they had to go back to work and accept the pay cut and longer working day.
- 7) In 1925 coal sales dropped off again. Mine owners announced more wage cuts and longer working days.
- 8) The miners began negotiations, backed by the Trades Union Congress — a sort of union of all the unions.
- 9) On 'Red Friday' in June 1925, the Government agreed to pay a subsidy to keep miners' wages at the same level. The subsidy would be paid for nine months.
- 10) At the same time a Royal Commission — the Samuel Commission — looked into what could be done to sort out the dispute. The Samuel Commission reported in April 1926.

The coal industry is the key to the General Strike

You can get away with a sketchy knowledge of the coal disputes, but not too sketchy. You at least need to know why the coal industry was doing badly and what year the Samuel Commission was appointed.

The General Strike 1926

The General Strike was one of the biggest showdowns between the people and Government in the twentieth century — that's one reason why many historians get excited about it. I'm not saying you have to get excited, but knowing exactly what happened might just help you pass your exams.

The Samuel Report was fair but nobody liked it

The Samuel Commission said mine owners should reorganise their businesses and introduce modern machinery. That way the mines would be more efficient and profitable. There would be no need to cut wages and increase hours. This suited the miners but not the mine owners.

The Commission also said the subsidy should stop. Miners would have to take a temporary pay cut until the owners had had time to reorganise the mines. The miners weren't at all pleased with this.

The General Strike began when the subsidy ended

- 1) Neither side accepted the Samuel Report. The mine owners said they would cut wages on 30 April. The miners said they'd strike on 1 May. The owners locked out the workers on 30 April — starting a strike.
- 2) The TUC felt that if the miners' wages were reduced, then those of other workers would soon follow. They threatened a strike of all key workers — a General Strike — starting on 3 May.
- 3) Negotiations between the TUC and the Government began on 2 May.
- 4) But the Prime Minister, Stanley Baldwin, pulled out of the negotiations.
- 5) In the early hours of 3 May the TUC went to Downing Street to talk again, but Baldwin had gone to bed.
- 6) The Strike began at one minute after midnight on 4 May 1926.



The strikers couldn't close the country down

Thousands of workers joined in with the Strike. There were workers from mining, transport, the railways, construction, shipbuilding, printing, electricity and the steel industry.

- 1) The printers' strike closed down ordinary newspapers, but the TUC and the Government each produced their own. The Government paper was called the British Gazette, edited by Winston Churchill. It described the Strike as violent, disorganised and an attack on the British constitution. The TUC's paper, the British Worker, emphasised the solidarity of the Strike, and said the Strike was an industrial issue, not an attack on the Government. It also attacked Churchill.
- 2) 30 000 men volunteered for the Organisation for the Maintenance of Supplies. They were mainly students and middle-class men. They kept the buses, trains and London Underground moving.
- 3) Food supplies were transported in armoured convoys escorted by special constables. In London, Hyde Park was used as a centre for distributing milk. There were no shortages because of the Strike.
- 4) Although the Government expected violence, it wasn't that bad. Some buses were attacked in London, and there was minor crowd trouble in Nottingham, Leeds, Edinburgh, Glasgow and Aberdeen. American newspapers wrote about how peaceful the Strike was — even minor American strikes were more violent.

The Government refused to negotiate, but offered a peace plan drawn up by Sir Herbert Samuel. The TUC called off the Strike on 12 May, and everyone except the miners gave up.

Stanley Baldwin said the end of the Strike was "a victory for common sense".

The King sent a telegram to the nation asking people not to bear grudges now the Strike was over.

Learn the sequence of events

A rather dense page I'm afraid. Learn it, cover it and then write a mini essay explaining what triggered the strike, what the strikers did, and how the Government managed to keep the country running.

Effects of the General Strike

The General Strike is a bit of an odd event — observers from Russia hoped there would be a Communist Revolution, but couldn't believe how peaceful it was. But it had major effects long-term.

The General Strike didn't last long

The General Strike lasted just nine days before the TUC gave in. There's more than one possible reason for this.

- 1) The Government refused to negotiate. They saw the Strike as a test of their strength. The TUC realised that the Government was never going to back down, so there was no point in carrying on.
- 2) The Government's reaction was so strong that there was a danger of violence if the Strike continued — amongst others, Churchill had said "we are at war", and called for armoured cars to protect food convoys.
- 3) The TUC wasn't keen on the idea of a strike, and weren't well enough organised.
- 4) The National Sailors' Union and the Firemen's Union didn't want to strike. They went to court to prove they didn't have to. The court said the Strike was illegal on 11 May. This took away popular support.
- 5) Some unions didn't have enough cash to fund their members for long, and the banks wouldn't give them overdrafts. The TUC had already spent £4 million out of their Strike fund of £12.5 million.
- 6) The TUC thought it would be better to have a definite end to the Strike than for it to fizzle out.
- 7) There were rumours that the Government was going to arrest the leaders of the TUC and seize their funds.
- 8) The Labour Party didn't support the Strike — its leader Ramsay MacDonald felt it would lose them votes.

9 days later...



The Strike's failure was a blow to the unions

- 1) The miners stayed out on strike for another six months. When they finally gave in and went back to work they had to accept lower wages and longer hours. The Strike hadn't really improved anything.
- 2) Some miners and railwaymen who'd been on strike were given a hard time at work. But many business owners became more reasonable to their workers.
- 3) The Trades Disputes Act was passed in 1927. The Act made it illegal for a union to join a general strike or a sympathy strike (one where you go on strike to support workers from a different union). 'Contracting out' was changed to 'contracting in' (see P.90). In other words, if you wanted to pay towards the Labour Party funds you had to sign a form agreeing to it. Fewer people contracted in than had previously given money to Labour, so the Labour Party had a drop in income.
- 4) The Strike cost the TUC about £4 million. Without funds in the bank they weren't in a position to threaten new strikes. Membership dropped to about 4 million by 1933, so the unions had less and less income.
- 5) There was also a general blow to morale. The unions lost confidence and there were very few strikes right through the thirties.
- 6) But many workers began to realise that the Labour Party was their best hope of changing the system — and in 1929 Labour won the General Election.

Learn it in general — and then in detail

The 1926 General Strike is really important. Scribble a quick list of reasons why the Strike was so short lived and then learn the effects of the strike on the unions and Labour. You'll need all this in the exam.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Name 4 socialist groups set up in the nineteenth century.
- 2) What 5 things did the Independent Labour Party want to achieve?
- 3) Give 4 events that led to the General Strike in 1926.
- 4) What was the job of the Samuel Commission?
- 5) Give 3 possible reasons why the General Strike did not last very long.
- 6) What were the effects of the General Strike on the Trades Unions and the Labour Party?



Source A:
"The Subsidised Mineowner —
Poor Beggar!"

From The Trade Union
Unity Magazine, 1925

Source B: The reasons for the General Strike by a newspaper editor.

It is still frequently asserted, and perhaps by many believed, that this abortive attempt by Trade Unionists to assist their comrades, the miners, was an attack on the Constitution, a blow aimed at the State, a revolutionary act.

No one who was acquainted with the Trade Union leaders at that period, no one who watched from inside the day-to-day development of the affair, can think of this assertion with anything but amusement. There was not a single member of the General Council of the Trade Union Congress who would not have shrunk with horror from the idea of overturning the established order - if it had occurred to him. I am certain there was no one to whom it did occur. They decided on the strike in desperation. They had promised support to the miners, and they did not know what else to do.

From the autobiography, *My Seven Selves* (1935) by Henry Hamilton Fyfe

Source C: A personal account about the General Strike of 1926.

Although the General Strike lasted only ten days the miners held out from April until December... Stanley Baldwin promised that there would be no victimization when the miners went back to work. That was one more piece of deliberate deception. My father was not reinstated - for four months he trudged from pit to pit, turned away everywhere. Uncle Michael was also victimized, and so sadly he came to the decision that the only thing to do was to go off to America.

From a miner's daughter who was a university student at the time of the Strike

Source D: A modern historian's interpretation of the General Strike.

In support of a strike by coal miners over the issue of threatened wage cuts, the Trades Union Congress called a General Strike in early May 1926. The strike only involved certain key industrial sectors (docks, electricity, gas, railways) but, in the face of well-organised government emergency measures and lack of real public support, it collapsed after nine days.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What can you learn from **Source A** about the reasons behind the General Strike of 1926?

(5 marks)

- (b) What were the reasons for the General Strike according to **Source B**?

(5 marks)

- (c) How useful is **Source C** for studying the effects of the General Strike?

Explain your answer using **Source C** and your own knowledge.

(9 marks)

- (d) How accurate an interpretation is **Source D** of why the General Strike failed?

(10 marks)

- (e) "The General Strike was the reason for the Labour Party victory in the 1929 General Election."

Do you agree with this statement?

Use your own knowledge to support your answer.

(15 marks)

The Depression

In an economic depression, business just isn't working properly. Profits are down for almost everyone, and there's unemployment and bankruptcy left, right and centre. The Depression in the 1930s was the worst of the century. It started in America, and affected the whole world.

The Wall Street Crash in 1929 started the Depression

- 1) The US stockmarket crashed in October 1929. Millions of dollars were lost, factories closed, and millions of Americans lost their jobs.
- 2) Britain and other countries felt the effects. US customers had no money, so industry worldwide was short of customers. The USA stopped lending money abroad and wanted all loans repaid.
- 3) Industry couldn't employ people if there was no money to pay them with. One of the worst effects of the Depression was the massive unemployment. By 1931 there were almost 3 million unemployed in Britain.

There are two main reasons why the effects of the Wall Street Crash were bad in Britain:

1) The First World War had drained Britain's resources

- 1) The huge number of soldiers coming back from the war meant unemployment rose. During the 1920s an economic slump caused a steady rise in unemployment before the crash.
- 2) The coal mines, railways and other industries had been so busy during the war that there was no time for repairs or improvements. They weren't as efficient as they should have been.
- 3) Very few houses were built during the First World War. The population was increasing so there was a housing shortage — the poorest people were forced to live in sub-standard housing.
- 4) Some products were mainly sold abroad before the War. When customers couldn't trade with Britain during the war, they found new suppliers, and British industry lost custom.
- 5) As the economic slump after the war got worse, the Government found itself paying more and more unemployment benefit — but fewer people were contributing to the scheme and it couldn't cope.

2) Britain's staple industries were outdated

Before and during the First World War, the USA and Germany developed new industries like chemical production. Britain didn't, and in 1929 Britain's economy still relied on the same industries as in the nineteenth century: cotton production, steel production, shipbuilding, and coal mining.

Cotton

- The cotton industry lost customers because of the war.
- The mills were outdated, so it was hard to compete with manufacturers abroad.
- Man-made fibres, e.g. rayon, were invented which competed with cotton.

Shipbuilding & steel

- World trade slumped — so fewer goods needed transporting, and fewer ships needed to be built.
- Because fewer ships were being built less steel was needed too.

Coal

- Ships now ran on fuel oil, not coal.
- British coal was expensive. The stuff near the surface had been dug out and the mines didn't have modern machinery, so it took longer to get the coal to the surface.
- Strikes meant coal production was unreliable so more customers were lost.
- Homes in Britain were switching to gas and electricity and needed less coal.

The Wall Street Crash — a big money accident

Make sure you learn the two reasons why the effects of the Wall Street Crash were bad in Britain. Then cover the page and scribble down all the details about the three staple industries.

Two Britains

Don't go on and on about how grim life was in the 1930s without mentioning that it wasn't the same everywhere. You've got to try and give a balanced view that covers all the facts.

Scotland, Wales and the North of England suffered worst

Traditional industries like cotton production, steel production, shipbuilding and coalmining were based in Scotland, Northern England, South Wales and Northern Ireland. Unemployment and poverty were worst here as these industries were going downhill.



- 1) In these areas unemployment hit hard. There were many people living 'on the dole' all through the 1930s.
- 2) People living 'on the dole' (on benefits) could only afford very basic housing and food. New clothes and shoes were luxuries.
- 3) There were social clubs in some towns, and allotments where unemployed people could grow their own vegetables, but these were hardly enough to cancel out the dissatisfaction of having no job. The psychological damage to many people from the boredom, frustration and insecurity was huge.
- 4) The Special Areas Act was passed in 1934 to give extra help to South Wales, Tyneside, West Cumberland, and Scotland. The Act allowed the Government to invest in projects that would bring employment to these areas. e.g. a new steelworks at Ebbw Vale in South Wales.
- 5) But these areas remained depressed despite attempts to help. By 1937, there was 75% unemployment in the town of Jarrow.

The Midlands and South East of England still did OK

Meanwhile living standards in the Midlands and South East actually improved during the 1930s. Once the initial economic crisis passed, these areas came out of depression into prosperity.

- 1) New industries created new jobs in these areas. Power stations for electricity, and factories producing chemicals, cars and aeroplanes were set up in the South East and Midlands.
- 2) Wages were soon going up faster than prices. The 'average' worker was probably about a third better off in 1939 than in 1914.
- 3) Quite a lot of new housing was built by local councils during the 1930s. There were still some slums, but the average standard for housing improved.
- 4) Food imported from the Dominions — Canada, Australia and New Zealand — was cheap for the better paid Southern workers. This meant they had more money to spend on luxury goods or holidays.
- 5) Now some people could afford new inventions like vacuum cleaners, which made housekeeping much easier. This gave them more leisure time — so they could go on holidays or to the cinema.
- 6) Taxes were low — people took most of their money home, and could afford these new leisure activities.

Boom and depression — at the same time

It's really important to know how Britain effectively had two economies in the 1930s — a poor one in the North and Wales, and a booming one in the South and Midlands. Get the reasons clear too.

Government Measures

Politicians and economists were full of ideas about how to tackle the Depression. The two main jobs were to help the unemployed, and encourage British industry.

The dole was the main help for unemployed families

In 1929 an unemployed man could claim for dole. He would get a bit more if he was married, and another small sum for each child in the family. To get the dole, a man had to do two things:

- 1) He had to prove that he was actively looking for work. In some areas like South Wales this was a bit of a joke, as there weren't any jobs at all. Even so, he had to keep looking.
- 2) His family had to show it needed the extra money from the dole. This was called a Means Test — it tested if the family had the means to live without the dole. It was designed to make sure taxpayers' money wasn't wasted. If the family had any savings or extra cash — say from a child's Saturday job — the amount of dole money was reduced or even refused completely. The Test was massively unpopular.

In 1931, over 2.6 million people were unemployed. The National Government couldn't afford all the payments and had to cut the dole by 10%. At the same time they raised income tax.

- 1) In 1934, the economy began a slight recovery. The Government had more money, and dole went back up to the pre-1931 level.
- 2) There were also efforts aimed at getting people back to work. In 1936, The Unemployment Assistance Board took over organising the dole and Means Tests, labour exchanges (job centres) and training schemes to help people learn skills which would get them jobs in different parts of the country.

The Import Duties Act of 1932 helped British industry

- 1) The Import Duties Act was passed in 1932.
- 2) The Act put a flat-rate tax of 10% on imports coming from outside the Empire.
- 3) This made goods coming from abroad more expensive than British goods and increased sales of British products. The idea was that industry would pick up again and new jobs would be created for the unemployed.
- 4) This 10% tax also gave the Government a valuable new income. It meant they didn't have to raise income tax again.



The Depression began to lift in the mid-30s

- 1) **Employment figures began to improve**
Unemployment figures dropped under 2 million in 1936 — and kept dropping. Bank interest rates were very low — property developers and local councils took advantage of this to build new houses and roads, so there were increasing numbers of jobs in construction.
- 2) **The USA and other countries began to recover**
...and when other economies improved, Britain's economy improved as well. Healthy economies abroad meant plenty of customers for British industry.
- 3) **The Second World War ended the Depression**
From 1936 onwards the Government started building up arms, because of concerns that there could be another war. This created jobs in the arms factories. When the war actually came there was even more work to be done. There was still some unemployment — but only about 300 000 people by 1941, compared to almost 3 million in 1931.

The Means Test — it sounds pretty miserly to me

Make sure you know about the Means Test, and the reasons for the lifting of the Depression. You'll also need to learn all the measures the Government undertook to ease the crisis (and the date of each act).

The Reaction to Poverty

The Government's way of solving problems was to think up and pass laws. But ordinary people reacted in all sorts of ways. It's important stuff this — for someone living at the time it would have seemed a lot more real than news about MPs in the Commons discussing a new bill.

Writers described the problems poor people faced

Several authors wrote about the poverty British people were suffering, and the lives they led. They're useful sources for information and opinions written at the time.

- 1) JB Priestley brought out a book called *English Journey* in 1934. It was a kind of travel book describing living conditions around the country.
- 2) *The Road to Wigan Pier*, by George Orwell was published in 1937. It was about an area of Lancashire where men traditionally worked in the coalmines, and women worked in the cotton mills. The Depression put everyone out of work in areas like this.

You can't exactly get out a ruler and measure how much books change attitudes, but it's likely that these books made people think about the problems in Britain more than they had before.

There were some protests — without success

- 1) During the Depression, people in many other countries turned to revolution or parties with extreme political views to solve their problems e.g. the Nazi Party in Germany.
- 2) But in Britain, after the General Strike failed in 1926 (see P.92), many working class organisations like the trade unions lost confidence in protest as a way of achieving change.
- 3) Laws were passed which weakened the unions, and limited their influence on employers.
- 4) Trade unions concentrated on helping members who were in work.
- 5) Jarrow was a shipbuilding town on Tyneside, which suffered terribly from unemployment and poverty in the 30s. In October 1936 200 unemployed shipyard workers walked 300 miles to London to protest about the shipyard being closed.
- 6) This was known as the Jarrow Crusade — but the Government refused to be influenced by it. When the protesters returned to Jarrow they found their unemployment benefit wasn't paid while they were away — because they weren't available for work.
- 7) The Jarrow Crusade and other marches like it didn't bring any obvious benefits — but it did make many people aware of how bad the situation was amongst the unemployed.
- 8) One extreme party appeared in Britain — the British Union of Fascists, led by Oswald Mosley. They wanted to set up a Fascist state in Britain — and blamed the Jews for Britain's problems. By 1934 the BUF had 20 000 members and held rallies and fought with other political groups. As the dangers of Fascism in Germany became clearer after 1937, BUF support dwindled.

The Depression changed attitudes to poverty

People who'd lived through the 1930s didn't want to see anything like it in Britain ever again. During and immediately after the Second World War (1939–1945) there was a complete rethink about what help the Government should give people. For more on this, see Section Nine.

The Depression ended — but it had long-term effects

One long-term effect of the Depression was a big change in attitudes to poverty. But you need to make sure you know about attitudes at the time too — from writers, and protests like Jarrow.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Give three ways in which World War I had drained Britain's resources.
- 2) Give two ways in which Britain's staple industries had become outdated.
- 3) Give two reasons why the effects of the Depression were worst in some parts of Britain than in others.
- 4) What was the Means Test and why was it unpopular?
- 5) Explain two reactions to the poverty caused by the Depression.



Source A: A photograph of unemployed shipbuilding workers on a protest march.

Photo of Jarrow marchers in 1937.

Source B: Government statistics about employment in selected industries 1930 to 1939. They show the percentage increase in the number of people employed in these industries 1930-39.

Car Manufacture.....	12%
Electrical.....	24%
Bicycles.....	22%
Chemicals.....	15%
Man-made Fibres and Materials.....	33%

Taken from Government's economic statistics for the period 1930 to 1939

Source C: A modern historian's view of the Depression in Britain.

Great Britain experienced a notable decline in its exports, which was even greater than the decrease in its imports. Those two factors contributed to generate a deficit in its balance of payments. Still, compared to most other industrialized countries, the U.K. got through the Depression in better economic health. Three elements are often mentioned in the British recovery: the abandoning of the gold standard in 1931, the adoption of higher tariffs and the devaluation of the pound. When the U.K. abandoned the gold standard, it gave itself a competitive advantage vis-à-vis those countries that did not. The new tariff laws helped by protecting domestic industries and the 30 percent devaluation of the pound added to the competitive edge of the U.K. by making British products cheaper to the rest of the world.

Source D: Another historian's view of the Depression in Britain.

Figures of 22% of the labour force unemployed in Britain were statistics of stark misery and despair. Men felt deprived of their ability to provide for their families and women and children were disgusted at authority figures whose authority was now hollow. In some cases wives and mothers found it easier to gain jobs in a low-wage economy than their husbands did, and although this development had some promise in terms of new opportunities for women, it could also be confusing for standard family roles.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What can you learn from **Source A** about the effects of the Depression on the people of Britain?

(5 marks)

- (b) Compare **Sources A** and **B**.

Do these sources agree about the effects of the Depression?

Explain your answer with reference to **both sources**.

(6 marks)

- (c) How reliable is **Source B** as evidence about the effects of the Depression in Britain?

Explain your answer using **Source B** and **your own knowledge**.

(5 marks)

- (d) **Sources C** and **D** give different interpretations of the impact the Depression had on life in Britain.

How useful are these sources in helping you to understand the impact of the Depression on the lives of people in Britain in the 1930s?

(10 marks)

- (e) "The Depression had the same effect on people in all parts of Britain."
Use the **sources** and **your own knowledge** to explain whether you agree with this view.

(15 marks)

Revision Summary

You've read the section, but have you done the revision? Use these questions to test how well you know your stuff — if you can't answer all the questions without looking at the section, you need to go back and get learning.

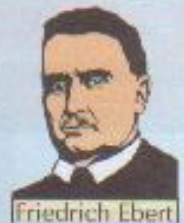
- 1) What does "nationalisation" mean?
- 2) Which socialist group founded in 1884 supported change through violent revolution?
- 3) Who did the 1872 Reform Act give the vote to?
- 4) In 1900, did the Liberals and Conservatives mainly represent the views of:
a) *socialists* b) *the working class* c) *the upper and middle classes*?
- 5) Who set up the Scottish Labour Party?
- 6) What five things did the Independent Labour Party want to achieve?
- 7) In which year did MPs first get a salary? How much was it?
- 8) What's the name of the first Labour Party Prime Minister?
- 9) How many people belonged to trade unions in 1920?
- 10) Name the two big new unions set up in 1920 and 1921.
- 11) What did the Royal Commission say the Government should do with the coal mines in 1919?
- 12) Why did British mines have trouble selling their coal during the 1920s? Give three reasons.
- 13) What did the miners like about the Samuel Commission report?
- 14) What didn't the miners like about the Samuel Commission report?
- 15) Where was Stanley Baldwin when the TUC went to 10 Downing Street on 3 May?
- 16) What kind of people joined the Organisation for the Maintenance of Supplies?
- 17) Give three possible reasons why the General Strike didn't last very long.
- 18) Did the miners get better wages after the General Strike?
- 19) What sort of strikes were made illegal in the Trades Disputes Act of 1927?
- 20) What effect did the General Strike have on many workers that may have led to Labour winning the 1929 General Election?
- 21) What happens in an economic depression?
a) Most businesses don't feel any effect at all — just the inefficient ones.
b) Business isn't working well and this leads to unemployment and bankruptcy.
- 22) Give three examples of how the First World War had drained Britain's resources.
- 23) Give two examples of how Britain's traditional industries had become outdated.
- 24) In which areas of Britain were the effects of the Depression worst?
- 25) Give two reasons why some areas of Britain came out of depression into prosperity.
- 26) What two things did an unemployed man have to do in 1929 to claim for the dole?
- 27) Why was the Means Test unpopular?
- 28) What did the Unemployment Assistance board take over organising in 1936?
- 29) Name two effects of the Import Duties Act of 1932.
- 30) What did property developers and local councils do to take advantage of low bank interest rates?
- 31) What effect did the Government's building up of arms after 1936 have on unemployment?
- 32) Name one writer who wrote about the poverty in Britain during the 1930s.
- 33) What was the Jarrow Crusade? Did it have any effect on the Government?
- 34) Who were the BUF?
- 35) Describe one long-term effect of the Depression.

The Weimar Republic

Even before World War I was over, the Germans had suffered badly — many were starving and an outbreak of influenza had killed thousands.

A new government took over when the Kaiser abdicated

This Government was led by Friedrich Ebert — Germany was now a Republic. Ebert was leader of the Social Democratic Party, a moderate party of socialists. They signed the Armistice on November 11th 1918. The new Government was democratic — they believed the people should say how the country was run. The new Republic was set up in February 1919, at Weimar, because there was violence in Berlin. Ebert became the first President, with Scheidemann as Chancellor.



Friedrich Ebert

THE WEIMAR GOVERNMENT

REICHSTAG
(Elected by proportional representation)
Leader of largest Party in the Reichstag appoints a Chancellor



President
Elected every 7 years

REICHSRAT
(Upper house could delay measures passed by Reichstag)

Proportional Representation is where the number of seats a party wins in parliament is worked out as a proportion of the number of votes they win.

This was the system in Germany and it often led to lots of political parties in the Reichstag (German Parliament) — making it harder to get laws passed.

The Weimar Republic had many problems

- 1) It was difficult to make decisions because there were so many parties in the Reichstag.
- 2) It was hard to pick a Chancellor who had the support of most of the Reichstag.
- 3) The new Government had to accept the post-war treaties, so they were hated by many Germans because of the loss of territory, the 'War-guilt' clause, the reparations etc.
- 4) There were many outbreaks of trouble, and Ebert agreed to form the Freikorps, a body of ex-soldiers to keep the peace.



The Weimar Republic had weaknesses

The Weimar Republic was set up in a time of defeat — which made it unpopular right from the start. Don't forget — many people didn't accept the peace settlements at the end of the First World War.

Years of Unrest

Left and right mean...

LEFT
People who want to change things often through extreme measures

LEFT and RIGHT in Politics, named after the French Revolution, where people who wanted to change things sat on the left in the National Assembly

RIGHT
People who want things to stay the same, or even get stricter

Reasons for discontent

- 1) Thousands of people were poor and starving — an influenza epidemic had killed thousands more people.
- 2) Many Germans denied they had lost the war and blamed the 'November Criminals' who had agreed to the Armistice and the Treaty of Versailles.
- 3) Others blamed for losing the war included the Communists, the Government, and the Jews.
- 4) The Government was seen as weak and ineffective — the Treaty of Versailles had made living conditions worse in Germany.



Soon there were riots and rebellions

- 1) In 1919, the Communists led by Karl Liebknecht and Rosa Luxemburg tried to take over Berlin in the Spartacist Revolt — but they were defeated by the Freikorps.
- 2) In 1920, some of the right-wing Freikorps themselves took part in the Kapp Putsch (Putsch means revolt). Led by Wolfgang Kapp, they took over Berlin to form another government. The workers staged a General Strike and Kapp gave up. The Government didn't punish the rebels, because many judges sympathised with people like Kapp.



Wolfgang Kapp

- 3) In 1922 Walter Rathenau was killed — he'd been the Foreign Minister who signed the Rapallo Treaty with Russia and was Jewish. Many Germans were now anti-Jewish (anti-semitic).



Not everyone accepted the Weimar Republic

Remember, Germans were used to living under a monarchy. Not everyone accepted the authority of the elected politicians. Make sure you know all the political reasons why people rebelled.

Years of Unrest

In 1923 Germany couldn't pay the reparations

So France and Belgium occupied the Ruhr — the richest industrial part of Germany — to take resources directly instead of payment. This led to fury in Germany, while workers in the Ruhr refused to work. The government started printing money to pay the striking workers. The disruption meant that German industry was devastated again, and the economy was plunged into hyperinflation. ✓



Hyperinflation happens when production can't keep up with the amount of money there is, so the money keeps losing its value.

Hyperinflation had three major results

- 1) Wages were paid twice a day before prices went up again.
- 2) The Middle Classes lost out as bank savings became worthless.
- 3) The German Mark became worthless.



In August 1923 Stresemann became Chancellor — he gradually led Germany back to recovery.

The Nazis led the Munich Putsch

- 1) Stresemann faced more rebellions — one of the most important came in Munich in November 1923.
- 2) Right-wing Nationalists called the National Socialist German Workers' Party (Nazis) tried to take over the Bavarian Government.
- 3) Their leader was Adolf Hitler, supported by famous war-hero General Ludendorff.
- 4) They were defeated, and Hitler went to prison for just nine months. Ludendorff was let off and people forgot the Nazis.



Hyperinflation — people abandoned wallets for wheelbarrows

Phew, some complicated economics here — but it's not that hard for you to learn. Remember that discontent got worse when the economy went wrong — that's important for the 1930s too.

Stresemann and Recovery

Stresemann wanted international cooperation

Stresemann was Chancellor for a few months, then Foreign Minister. He believed Germany's best chance for recovery came from working with other countries.

- 1) In September 1923 he told the workers in the Ruhr to return to work.
- 2) He accepted the Dawes Plan in 1924, and introduced a new German Mark called the Rentenmark to make the currency more stable.
- 3) In 1925 the French and Belgian troops left the Ruhr.
- 4) In October 1925 he agreed to the Locarno Settlement where the Western Borders of Germany were agreed, but not the Eastern. He won the Nobel Peace Prize for his efforts in this field.
- 5) In 1926, Germany joined the League of Nations, and became one of the permanent members of the Council.
- 6) In 1929, the Young Plan replaced the Dawes Plan — reparations would be reduced by one-quarter of the amount, and Germany was given 58 years to pay them.



Germany had begun to recover

but they still **depended on US money**



Gustav Stresemann

Life was beginning to look better for Germany thanks to the work of Stresemann. But he died in October 1929, just before the disaster of the Wall Street Crash. The plans he had agreed would only work if the USA had enough money to keep lending to Germany — but now it didn't. Things were suddenly going to get worse again.

Stresemann seemed to have it all under control

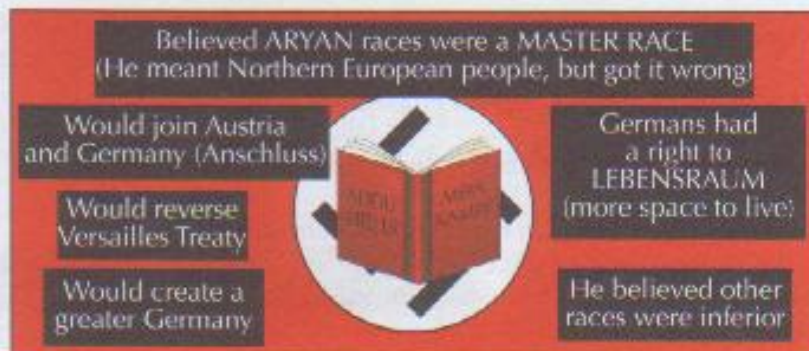
The Twenties were a tough decade in Germany. Scribble a paragraph on the work of Gustav Stresemann and his policies. But don't forget — the Wall Street Crash would hit Germany very hard.

The Roots of the Nazi Party

When life got better under Stresemann, nobody thought about the Nazis. But from 1929 the Depression began to affect Germany badly — this gave Hitler the chance he needed.

Adolf Hitler was the Nazi leader

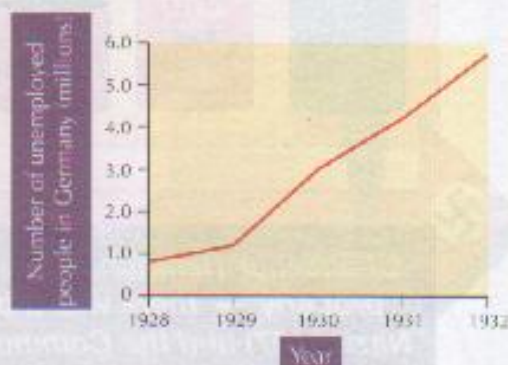
- 1) Born in Austria, he had lived in Germany from 1912 onwards.
- 2) He'd been a brave soldier on the Western Front in the Great War, winning the Iron Cross twice. He couldn't accept that Germany had lost the war.



- 3) In 1919, he joined the German Workers' Party, became leader and changed its name to the National Socialist German Workers' Party (Nazis).
- 4) He was a charismatic speaker and soon the Party had grown.
- 5) In the 1923 elections the Nazis won 6% of the vote.
- 6) Hitler was imprisoned briefly in 1923 after the Munich Putsch, and wrote Mein Kampf (My Struggle) which contains many of his ideas — some very odd (see diagram above).

The Nazis became popular with several groups

- 1) The military, who resented the end of the war and the small army Germany was allowed after it.
- 2) Middle class people, who had suffered financially after the war.
- 3) Some business people, who feared the growth of Communism — which didn't believe in businesses making profit (commercialism).
- 4) Germans who thought the government was weak and had betrayed the people in the peace process and the Versailles Treaty.
- 5) Farmers — because food prices were low.
- 6) Unemployed people who were suffering as a result of the depression — saw hope in a strong leader.
- 7) People who disliked the Jews — anti-semites.
- 8) Thugs who found the Nazi methods exciting.



Very few people were really interested in the Nazis at this stage. There were less than 30,000 members by 1925, and in the 1928 elections, the Nazis had 13 Reichstag members, compared with 54 Communists and 152 Social Democrats.

The Nazis — ready to sweep to power

Not much fun this page, I'm afraid — but it's very important you learn it, so you know where the Nazis came from and what they stood for. Scribble a list of the kinds of people who supported them.

The Rise of the Nazis

The Nazis were like an 'Army'

The Nazi party was well organised under several leading Nazis. The Party also had its own 'para-military' forces.

- 1) Hermann Goering was a World War I air-ace.
- 2) Josef Goebbels took charge of Propaganda in the party.
- 3) Heinrich Himmler was later in charge of the SS stormtroopers.
- 4) Ernst Röhm, who was in charge of the Sturmabteilung — the SA.
The SA were a military force of brownshirted stormtroopers who protected the Nazi leaders and harassed their political opponents.



Josef Goebbels

The Depression hit Germany hard, and by 1929, membership of the Nazi party had risen to nearly 200,000 — people thought the Weimar Government couldn't sort out Germany's problems.

The elections of 1930 showed Nazi gains



Chancellor Heinrich Brüning couldn't control the Reichstag properly — there was a big increase in seats for both the Nazis (107) and the Communists (77). Brüning had to rule by emergency decree as no single party had enough seats to control the Reichstag.

Nazi gains were a result of the Depression

Economic catastrophe caused many Germans to look for radical solutions to their problems. The strong organisation of the Nazi party, made them ideally placed to take advantage of this discontent.

The Rise of the Nazis

Germany had no strong government

- 1) By April 1932, conditions were serious in Germany. 6 million people were unemployed, and the country was desperate for a strong Government.
- 2) President Hindenburg had to stand for re-election, because his term of office had run out. Hitler stood against him, and there was also a Communist candidate.
- 3) Hindenburg, a national hero, said he'd win easily but didn't win a majority in the first election — in the second ballot he won 53% and beat Hitler who won 36.8% of the vote.

Hindenburg refused to give the Nazis power



- 1) Hindenburg couldn't find a Chancellor who had support in the Reichstag.
- 2) He appointed the inexperienced Franz von Papen.
- 3) Von Papen couldn't govern so there were new elections in June 1932.
- 4) The Nazis won 230 seats — they were now the biggest party, but didn't have a majority in the Reichstag. Hitler demanded to be made Chancellor.
- 5) Hindenburg refused because he didn't trust Hitler and reappointed Von Papen. Hitler was offered the Vice-Chancellor's job instead, on the advice of Von Papen.
- 6) Hitler refused, and waited for the next set of elections.



Germany 1930-32 — a state of confusion

The key point is the sequence of events. Hitler didn't come to power overnight — his support increased as the economy got worse and as the other political parties failed to solve Germany's problems.

Hitler Comes to Power

The new government still couldn't govern properly, and in November 1932 new elections were called — here's how Hitler became master of Germany.

The Nazis lost seats in the elections

- 1) The Nazis lost 34 seats — the opposition parties thought the Nazis were losing popularity.
- 2) Hindenburg appointed Kurt von Schleicher as Chancellor.
- 3) Von Schleicher tried to weaken the Nazis by asking another leading Nazi to be Vice-Chancellor — Gregor Strasser — but Hitler stopped him accepting.
- 4) Soon, Hindenburg gave in, and offered Hitler the post of Chancellor in January 1933.
- 5) Hitler decided to call for another election in March 1933, hoping to make the Nazis stronger in the Reichstag.

The Nazis used dirty tricks to win in 1933

The Nazis did well in the elections because:

- 1) They controlled the news media.
- 2) Opposition meetings were banned.
- 3) They used the SA to terrorise opponents.
- 4) A fire broke out in the Reichstag building, and Hitler whipped up opposition against the Communists, who he claimed started it.
- 5) Hitler used emergency decrees to pass measures against terrorists — Communists were arrested so that people wouldn't vote for them.



Hitler changed the Law to gain control

- 1) The Nazis won 288 seats but no majority — the Communists still won 81.
- 2) So Hitler declared the Communist party illegal.
- 3) This gave him support in parliament to bring in an Enabling Bill which was passed with threats and bargaining in March 1933.
- 4) This Bill let him govern for four years without parliament and made all other parties illegal. Hitler was almost in full control.

The Night of the Long Knives

Hitler still had opposition. The biggest threat was Ernst Röhm, who controlled the SA (over 400,000 men). On 30th June 1934, Hitler sent his own men to arrest Röhm and others. Several hundred people were killed, including leading SA officers, and von Schleicher. Röhm was shot next day. The SA had been destroyed, and a month later, when Hindenburg died, Hitler combined the posts of Chancellor and President, made himself Commander-in-Chief of the army, and was called Der Führer (the leader).

Democracy at work — Hitler was elected to power

Make sure you know what conditions in Germany made Hitler's rise possible, and what he did when he was in power to secure his position. Scribble a list of the events of 1933 and 1934, and learn it.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List 3 reasons why the Weimar Republic was so unpopular between the years 1919-1923.
- 2) What did Stresemann do to help Germany recover from Hyperinflation?
- 3) Summarise the 6 main ideas Hitler wrote about in Mein Kampf.
- 4) What different groups of people supported Hitler and the Nazi Party initially? List 3 types of people and give reasons for their support.
- 5) How did the Wall Street Crash and the Great Depression help Hitler come to power?
- 6) Write a timeline of events for January 1932 - January 1933 that led up to Hitler becoming Chancellor.

Source A: Reichstag election results May 1924-March 1933.

Political Parties in the Reichstag	May 1924	Dec. 1924	May 1928	Sep. 1930	July 1932	Nov. 1932	Mar. 1933
Communist Party (KPD)	62	45	54	77	89	100	81
Social Democratic Party (SDP)	100	131	153	143	133	121	120
Catholic Centre Party (BVP)	81	88	78	87	97	90	93
Nationalist Party (DNVP)	95	103	73	41	37	52	52
Nazi Party (NSDAP)	32	14	12	107	230	196	288
Other Parties	102	112	121	122	22	35	23

Source B: A British newspaper reporter's view of the Reichstag Fire.

The arson of the German parliament building was allegedly the work of a Communist-sympathizing Dutchman, van der Lubbe. More probably, the fire was started by the Nazis, who used the incident as a pretext to outlaw political opposition and impose dictatorship.

Source C: Marinus van der Lubbe's statement to the police about the Reichstag Fire, March 1933.

I myself am a Leftist, and was a member of the Communist Party until 1929. I had heard that a Communist demonstration was disbanded by the leaders on the approach of the police. In my opinion something absolutely had to be done in protest against this system. Since the workers would do nothing, I had to do something myself. I considered arson a suitable method. I did not wish to harm private people but something belonging to the system itself. I decided on the Reichstag. As to the question of whether I acted alone, I declare emphatically that this was the case.

Source D:
"How Hitler says 'Legal'".
From a German paper, 1932.



Although this picture isn't very clear, there are thugs standing in between the letters inside Hitler's mouth.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What can you learn from **Source A** about the popularity of the Communists and of the Nazi Party in Germany between May 1924 and March 1933?

(5 marks)

- (b) How does **Source B** help to explain the election results of March 1933?

(5 marks)

- (c) Study **Sources B and C**.

- (i) How does **Source B** differ from **Source C** in its explanation of how the Reichstag fire started?
- (ii) How reliable are these sources?

(10 marks)

- (d) Hitler claimed that he came to power legally. Using the evidence in **Sources A, B and D** and **your own knowledge**, say whether you agree with this claim.

(10 marks)

- (e) Why did the Nazis gain popularity in the period 1919 - 1933?

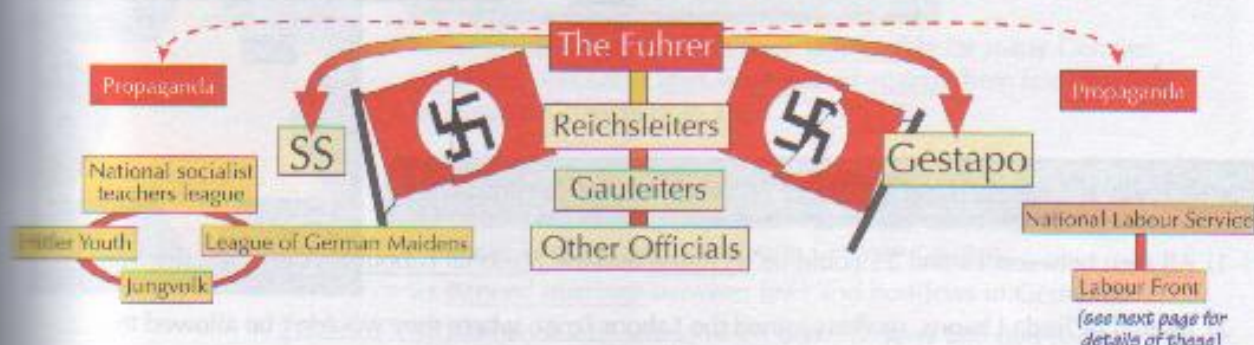
(15 marks)

Life Under the Nazis

Time to look at why so many people supported Hitler.

Germany was now under **strong leaders**

- 1) Germany was re-organised into Gaus (provinces) with a Gauleiter — a loyal Nazi in charge.
- 2) Above them were the Reichsleiters like Goering and Goebbels, who advised Hitler.
- 3) At the top was the Führer — Hitler himself — who was in absolute control.
- 4) Every aspect of life was carefully controlled, and only loyal Nazis could be successful.



The Nazis controlled all information

- 1) Goebbels was in charge of propaganda and controlled all public information — the Nazis controlled the radio, films, newspapers, and education.
- 2) All teachers had to belong to the National Socialist Teachers' League, and all schools taught that Germans were a superior race to others.
- 3) Textbooks were re-written to include subjects like Race Studies, and the Nazi version of history.
- 4) Goebbels had the support of the SS, formed in 1925 as a personal force for Hitler and the leading Nazis. After 1934 it grew in power.
- 5) The Gestapo were secret police and could arrest anybody without cause.



Many Germans didn't know what was really going on. They were afraid to speak out, because the Nazis encouraged people to inform on anybody who didn't support them — and these people would be arrested.

Propaganda could get you marks

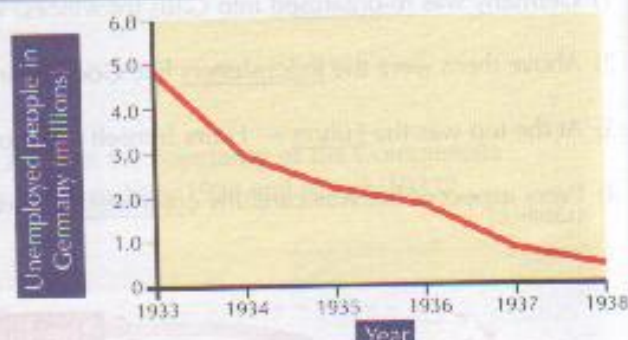
This page is really important. You'll need these bits for questions about how the Nazis controlled people's lives. Examiners often give you Nazi images to use. If you get a source in the exam which you think is Nazi propaganda, don't just dismiss it as useless — every source tells you something.

German Growth Under the Nazis

Remember — there were up sides to life in Nazi Germany too. Nazi control wasn't all about coercion. People also supported the Nazis because Hitler provided them with jobs.

Hitler gave work to 6 million unemployed

Hitler started a huge programme of public works, which gave jobs to thousands of people. From 1933, huge motorways — autobahns — were started, and the Nazis had big plans for many public buildings, including the stadium which would hold the 1936 Olympic Games.



People were encouraged to work by rewards

- 1) All men between 18 and 25 could be recruited into the National Labour Service and given jobs.
- 2) Instead of Trade Unions, workers joined the Labour Front, where they wouldn't be allowed to go on strike, but had higher wages than before.
- 3) The Nazis introduced the 'Strength through Joy' idea — good workers were awarded prizes, like holidays.
- 4) Output increased in Germany, and unemployment was almost ended completely.
- 5) The Nazis introduced the Volkswagen (the people's car) as an ambition for people to aim for.



Hitler re-armed the Germany military

'German and Italian re-armament is proceeding much more rapidly than re-armament can in England. In three years Germany will be ready.'

Adolf Hitler 1936

Another way of creating work was to build up the armed forces. The Nazis did this secretly at first, because the Treaty of Versailles had banned it. Hitler sacked some of the generals, and replaced them with Nazi supporters. Goering was put in charge of the Luftwaffe (airforce), which had been banned at Versailles.

Nazi Germany — the good, the bad and the ugly

Learn the three major factors which made Hitler's control complete — strong government, control of information and jobs created for 6 million workers. These factors are incredibly important.

The Jews in Nazi Germany

Hitler believed the Germans were a super-race

- 1) Hitler thought other races were inferior — Goebbels's propaganda persuaded people to agree with this, and it blamed other races for weakening the German people.
- 2) Hitler was angry when a black American called Jesse Owens took 4 gold medals in the 1936 Berlin Olympics, and when the German World Heavyweight Boxing Champion Max Schmelling was beaten by another black American, Joe Louis.



Jesse Owens



The Nazis hated the Jews

Hitler claimed that the Jews were responsible for many German problems, and harsh laws were passed against them from the time he became Chancellor in 1933.

In 1935 he passed the Nuremberg Laws

- 1) These laws stopped Jews being German citizens.
- 2) Banned marriage between Jews and non-Jews in Germany.
- 3) Banned sexual relationships between Jews and non-Jews.
- 4) Forced all Jews to wear a yellow Star of David on their clothes.

Many Jews went into exile, like Albert Einstein — they spoke out against the Nazi regime from abroad, but the world did nothing.

Kristallnacht 1938 — The Night of the Broken Glass

- 1) A Jew murdered a German diplomat in Paris in November 1938.
- 2) There was rioting throughout Germany — thousands of Jewish shops were smashed, and thousands of Jews were arrested.
- 3) Nazi propaganda made people believe that the Jews were bad for Germany, so they should be sent to special concentration camps, or humiliated and maltreated in public.
- 4) People believed the camps were labour camps, where they would work for Germany. Many German people chose to ignore the reality of what was happening to the Jews.
- 5) Later, Nazi policy became more terrible as they tried to exterminate the Jewish race.



Nazi Germany — a climate of cruelty and fear

The Jews suffered terribly at the hands of the Nazis — and you need to know how and why. Remember — it wasn't just Jews who were persecuted, but also gypsies, homosexuals, and Slavic peoples.

Nazi Popularity

There was no real opposition to the Nazis

It's hard to understand why so few people protested — there were four main reasons:

- 1) Everybody was scared of the SS and the Gestapo.
- 2) People were better off after years of hardship, and chose to ignore what they didn't like.
- 3) Goebbels' propaganda was so effective that people didn't get the whole story about what was really going on — but believed the Nazi government knew best.
- 4) Opponents like the Communists or even opponents within the Nazi party had been eliminated.

A few brave men like the churchman MARTIN NIEMÖLLER did speak out against the Nazis, but he was arrested and sent to a concentration camp. Many churchmen were arrested when it seemed like the Churches might start to protest against the Nazis. Generally, they didn't.

Hitler controlled young people's beliefs

At ten years old, all children joined the Jungvolk (Young People) — then boys joined the Hitler Youth and girls joined the League of German Maidens. They were taught to support Hitler, even informing on their parents if necessary. Girls were taught that the role of women was to have lots of children, be good housewives and to support their men in making Germany great.

"Look at these young men and boys! With them I can make a new world!"
Adolf Hitler

Eight main reasons for Hitler's popularity

- 1) He gave the Germans jobs after the struggles and unemployment of the 1920s.
- 2) The people were taught the Nazi beliefs from an early age.
- 3) He made them proud of Germany — Germans had felt humiliated for a long time.
- 4) People felt much better off as industry expanded.
- 5) Massive rallies every year gave the impression of a strong, prosperous nation.
- 6) Propaganda delivered through radio, newspapers and films persuaded people to support and believe in Hitler.
- 7) Businesses liked the prosperity and the way Hitler attacked the Communists.
- 8) People were frightened to protest against Nazi methods — they knew they'd be arrested.


There was no real opposition to the Nazis

It's hard to understand why more people didn't oppose the Nazis. Scribble down the main reasons why people followed Hitler and how he made sure they did what he said. Then learn it.

Nazi Foreign Policy and the War

Hitler's main aims abroad were to reverse the Treaty of Versailles, unite all the German-speaking peoples again, and give the nation more 'living-space' — Lebensraum.

Hitler's foreign policy helped start another War

1933 - 1936	HITLER'S FOREIGN POLICY	1936 - 1939
Left League of Nations 1933		Anti - Comintern Pact with Japan and Italy 1936
Began to build up armed forces 1933		Anschluss with Austria March 1938
Introduced Conscription 1935		Occupied Sudetenland Oct 1938
Refused to accept Treaty of Versailles 1935		Occupied rest of Czechoslovakia March 1939
Anglo - German Naval agreement - Germany's navy is 36% of Britain's and allowed submarines		Pact of Steel with Italy May 1939
Occupation of Rhineland March 1936		Treaty with Russia August 1939
Rome - Berlin Axis Oct. 1936		Invaded Poland Sept 1939

We've looked at the main events in section 4 — but here are some key points for the exams.

Arguments in favour of Hitler's foreign policy

- 1) Hitler was only doing what most Germans wanted — even the Weimar Republic had broken the Versailles Treaty when it refused to accept the Eastern Borders, and built up the armed forces.
- 2) Germany had suffered the humiliation of Versailles long enough. It had to watch while the French occupied the Ruhr in 1923.
- 3) No other country would disarm — even though it was one of the main aims of the League of Nations.
- 4) When Britain signed the Anglo-German Naval Agreement of 1935, it approved Germany breaking the Versailles Treaty. Hitler also had some support in Britain when he took the Rhineland and Austria. Britain even agreed he should take most of the Sudetenland — some people still felt Versailles had been too harsh.

Arguments against Hitler's foreign policy

- 1) His wish to reverse Versailles and unite Germany was one thing — but taking the whole of Czechoslovakia and Poland was another.
- 2) Hitler showed he couldn't be trusted — he signed a non-aggression pact with Poland in 1934, and promised he didn't want to invade Czechoslovakia. In 1936 he had guaranteed the independence of Austria from Germany in the future. These promises were broken.
- 3) He took advantage of the weakness of the League of Nations and the British desire to keep the peace through appeasement (P. 84).
- 4) His views on other races made him a real danger to other countries as he tried to make Germany great again. No-one could trust a leader who believed in Aryan supremacy.

Foreign affairs — Hitler kept on pushing

There are two sides to every story — and you really do need to learn both, even if you think Hitler's foreign policy was wrong. That's the only way to get top marks in the Exam.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List four ways the Nazis controlled all information received by the German people.
- 2) Briefly explain how Hitler solved unemployment in Germany after 1933.
- 3) Summarise Hitler's views on race.
- 4) What was the significance of the Nuremberg Laws?
- 5) How did Hitler go against the terms of the Treaty of Versailles?
- 6) In what ways did Hitler's foreign policy help lead to war?

Source A: Goebbels' view of the role of women, 1929.

The mission of women is to be beautiful and to bring children into the world. This is not as unmodern as it sounds, the female bird pretties herself for her mate and hatches eggs for him. In exchange, the male takes care of gathering food, and stands guard and wards off the enemy.



Source B: A poster for the League of German Maidens.

The writing says 'Every girl belongs to us'.

Source C: From a speech by Robert Ley, head of the German Labour Front, 1936.

That is why we love Adolf Hitler so much. The German worker has the feeling that this man, our Fuhrer, works on his problems day and night! The German nation and its soul belong to Adolf Hitler and his party.

Source D: An interpretation of Nazi Germany.

On a smaller scale, people were kept in line by the Blockleiter, a party member responsible for a very small area. If you happened to omit the greeting 'Heil Hitler!' when you met him, there would be serious consequences. To avoid these you would perhaps say 'Heil Hitler!' even when it was unnecessary, and so give others the impression that you yourself were a keen supporter.

From *Hitler and the Germans*, by Ronald Grey, a British Historian, published 1981.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) Using **Source A** and **your own knowledge**, explain the Nazi's beliefs about the roles of women and men.
(5 marks)
- (b) **Source B** can be regarded as an example of Nazi propaganda. Does this mean it is of little value to a historian?
(5 marks)
- (c) Using **Sources B and C** and **your own knowledge**, explain the methods used by the Nazis to spread propaganda.
(5 marks)
- (d) **Sources C and D** differ in their interpretations of how far Germans supported Hitler. Why do you think these interpretations are so different?
(10 marks)
- (e) Use the **sources** and **your own knowledge** to explain why there was so little opposition to the Nazis within Germany.
(10 marks)

Revision Summary

Germany between the wars is a tricky subject — make sure you know about the long-term consequences of the Versailles Treaty, and the reasons for the weakness of the Weimar government. Most difficult of all, you've got to be able to give clear arguments for why Hitler was able to come to power and why no-one tried to stop him. Don't forget that you need to give both sides of the case. Remember, if you can't answer all the questions, go over the section again and keep trying until you can answer every one first time. And there's no point in cheating by looking back — that won't help you in the Exams.

- 1) What was the name of the first President of the Weimar Republic?
- 2) To which party did he belong?
- 3) Why was the government based at Weimar?
- 4) What is the correct name for the German Parliament?
- 5) Name the force which was started to keep the peace in Germany.
- 6) Give four reasons for discontent in Germany after World War I.
- 7) Write brief notes on the Spartacist Revolt and the Kapp Putsch.
- 8) Give three results of the French occupation of the Ruhr in 1923.
- 9) Which party was responsible for the Munich Putsch? Who was its leader?
- 10) Write a paragraph outlining the work of Gustav Stresemann.
- 11) Name six groups of people who supported the Nazis. Give reasons why they did.
- 12) Name four important Nazis apart from Adolf Hitler.
- 13) Name the military force which was set up to support the Nazis.
- 14) Who beat Hitler in the Presidential elections of April 1932?
- 15) Who was appointed Chancellor at the time of the November 1932 Reichstag elections?
- 16) Write short notes on the importance of the Reichstag Fire.
- 17) What did Hitler's Enabling Bill allow him to do in March 1933?
- 18) Write a paragraph on the importance of the Night of the Long Knives.
- 19) What title did Hitler give himself on the death of Hindenburg in 1934?
- 20) What was a Gau?
- 21) Which Nazi was put in charge of propaganda? Write about some of the methods he used.
- 22) Which organisation did teachers in Nazi Germany have to join?
- 23) What was the SS? What was the Gestapo?
- 24) Name two achievements of the Nazi programme of Public Works.
- 25) Write brief notes about the 'Strength through Joy' programme.
- 26) Name the leading Nazi who was put in charge of the Luftwaffe.
- 27) What organisation did workers have to join instead of Trade Unions?
- 28) Name the black athlete who won four medals at the Berlin Olympics in 1936.
- 29) What were the Nuremberg Laws? What did they do?
- 30) Describe what happened on the 'Night of Broken Glass'.
- 31) Which Churchman spoke out against the Nazis and was arrested?
- 32) In what ways did the Nazis make sure that young people followed their cause?
- 33) Give eight reasons why the German people followed the Nazis.
- 34) List the main events of Hitler's Foreign Policy 1933-39.
Give arguments for and against his policies.

Russia under the Tsars

The Government of the Russian Empire was unpopular



**Tsar
Nicholas II**

Absolute ruler:

There was no parliament, so the Tsar had complete rule. During his rule, Nicholas II became increasingly unpopular.

Peasants:

Made up 75% of the population. They were very poor and used old, inefficient farming methods.



Industrial workers:

Industry was growing. Workers suffered from poor living and working conditions, and low wages.

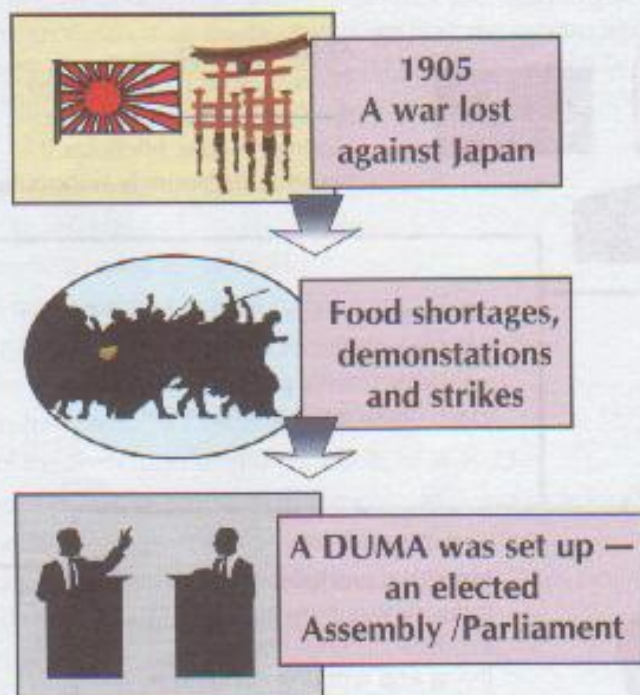
- 1) The Tsar was all powerful — he ruled without a parliament. Most of the country's wealth and land was owned by a small noble class. The Church taught that the Tsar must be obeyed.
- 2) Peasant villages were controlled by the 'mir' — a local council who interfered in everyone's business and had the power to decide whether a peasant was allowed to own or rent land.
- 3) The growth of industry meant there was a large working population in the towns — but conditions in the towns were cramped and the workers were badly paid.
- 4) In 1905 Russia was defeated in a war with Japan.
- 5) This defeat led to strikes and demonstrations — on 'Bloody Sunday' troops fired into a crowd of peaceful demonstrators in St. Petersburg. There was nearly a popular revolution.

The Russian people were really NOT happy

Many of the Russian people really did have a hard time of it. It's no surprise there was unrest. Learn all five points then close the book and write a paragraph on why the Russian government was unpopular in the early 1900s.

Russia under the Tsars

*The Tsar allowed some **change** and set up a **parliament***



- 1) In the first Duma of 1906, the Liberal Cadet party (Constitutional Democratic party) won a majority. They demanded control of taxes, as the Tsar had promised them.
- 2) Instead he dismissed the Duma and many Liberals fled to Finland. New elections were held.
- 3) This time the Duma was even more radical — members of the Marxist SDLP (Social Democratic Labour Party — see P. 124) won some seats from the Cadets. When the Tsar wanted to arrest several SDLP members as terrorists the Duma refused — so the Tsar dismissed it too.
- 4) The next two Dumas obeyed the Tsar (1907-1914). The SDLP were not allowed to run as candidates and any known troublemakers were arrested and imprisoned.
- 5) The press was censored and a secret police was used to spy on people the Tsar feared.
- 6) The situation of the people hadn't improved and there was still a lot of discontent among the poor industrial workers and the peasants.

There's nothing worse for morale than losing a war

The most important thing is how one event led to another. Social unrest after losing the war with Japan forced the Tsar into establishing the Duma — but the Tsar was worried by how close the country came to revolution. After 1906 he made sure that the Duma and the press came back under his control.

Countdown to Revolution

Attempted reform hit problems — 1906 to 1911

- 1) Prime Minister Stolypin wanted reforms for a slower and more natural rate of industrial growth — he was afraid that badly-run industry could get out of control.
- 2) He ended the control of the mir — hard-working peasants could rent or buy land to farm themselves, helped by special Peasant Banks. These richer peasants were known as Kulaks.
- 3) The mir system continued but became less efficient when the Kulaks left — causing problems for the country's food supply.
- 4) Peasants in the mir farms resented the wealth of some Kulaks.
- 5) Reform needed peace, but Europe was heading for war (section 2).
- 6) Stolypin was murdered in 1911 by a revolutionary.
- 7) Tsar Nicholas' wife Alexandra was influenced by a 'Holy Man' called Rasputin who claimed supernatural powers to treat the Tsar's son for haemophilia — a disease where the blood won't clot. Rasputin became powerful and even sacked and appointed government ministers. He was killed by angry nobles in 1916 — but the Tsar's authority had been undermined.



Kulaks,
Food supply,
Coming War,
Stolypin's murder,
Rasputin

The impact of the First World War

People wanted a short and victorious war, but:



- 1) There were high casualties — 1,700,000 soldiers dead by the end of 1917.
- 2) There was a shortage of rifles and other munitions equipment.
- 3) Military leadership was bad — the Tsar took personal command in 1915.
- 4) The Russian forces had been pushed back by the Germans and there was a stalemate (see P.24).
- 5) Inflation led to prices at home quadrupling between 1914 and 1917.
- 6) There was widespread hunger and food shortages at home.

The war speeded up the process of change — people had soon had enough of the Tsar and of what they thought was a pointless war.

The First World War was pretty much the last straw for the Tsar

There you go, two of the major causes of revolution here for you to learn — the failure of Stolypin's reforms and the impact of the First World War. Don't forget — the Tsar made some big mistakes himself by allowing Rasputin so much power and by taking personal command of the army in 1915, which meant he could be blamed for the disastrous war effort.

The Revolutionary Parties

The 'February' Revolution of 1917

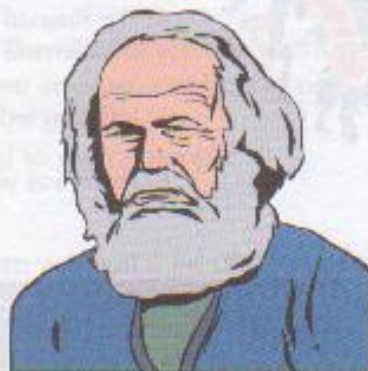
- 1) Demonstrations and food riots suddenly broke out in the capital city of Petrograd.
- 2) The Tsar had lost support and control — when his soldiers were ordered to fire on the mobs many refused or deserted to join the rioting workers.
- 3) The Tsar gave up the throne. A Provisional Government was formed under the leadership of Prince Lvov until July, and then under Kerensky. Russia was now a republic.
- 4) The main Revolutionary Parties were taken by surprise — this was a real people's revolution caused by sudden risings of workers and soldiers sick of the war, shortages and high prices.
- 5) This meant that the new government could face opposition from the Revolutionaries, who wanted power for themselves — among them, a group from the SDLP called the Bolsheviks.

Revolutionary *opposition* was widespread

- 1) The SRP — the Socialist Revolutionary Party — wanted to start a peasants' revolt.
- 2) The SDLP — Social Democratic Labour Party — wanted to set up a Communist state based on the ideas of the nineteenth century political thinker Karl Marx.
- 3) Many of these groups had been in exile — abroad or in distant parts of Russia — because it was dangerous to speak out. This was one reason they weren't involved in the February Revolution, and hadn't expected the sudden fall of the Tsar.

Marxism said *capitalism* was wrong

- 1) Capitalism is the economic system based on business — selling things to make a profit.
- 2) Marx said this was unjust because thousands of workers were receiving very low wages for labour that made a small elite class very rich.



Karl Marx (1818 - 1883)

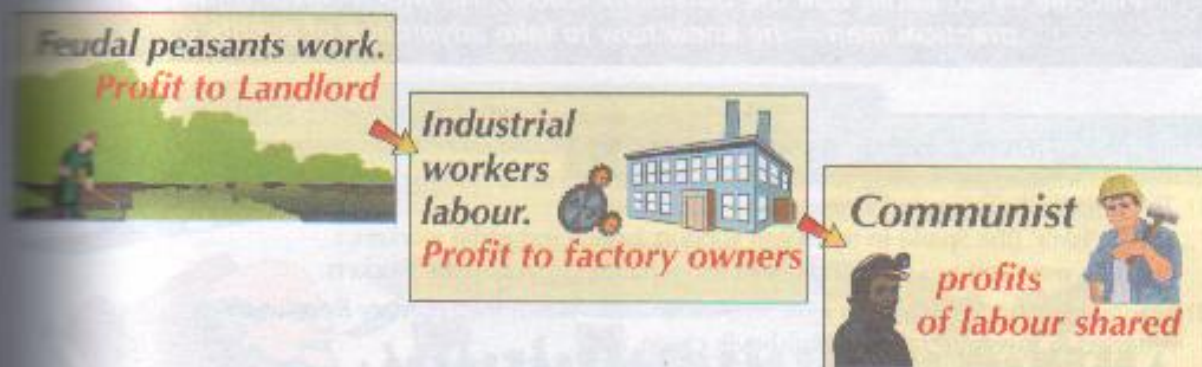
The sudden end of the Tsar took the revolutionary parties by surprise

This time it wasn't just the SRP and SDLP that wanted a revolution — it was pretty much everyone. Learn all of the issues — including the Marxist Communist ideals that the SDLP wanted to bring in.

The Revolutionary Parties

Marx saw *history as a process of change*

1. Marx viewed history as a process of development towards an ideal society — change comes because of class struggle — between rich, middle class (bourgeoisie) and working class (the proletariat).
2. Through History, the proletariat has been exploited by the rich and then by the bourgeoisie.
3. A monarchy was a Feudal system dominated by the rich upper class — this would eventually be replaced by a bourgeois revolution, setting up an Industrial Capitalist state.
4. Most countries in Western Europe had Industrial Capitalist systems, where the bosses — the capitalist owners — made a profit from the hard work of the proletariat.
5. This would in time lead to a violent revolution by the workers. After the revolution, the means of production would be used for everyone's benefit and shared — this is called Communism.
6. Eventually the state would "wither away".



The Communist *ideal...and reality*

Marx laid down a detailed analysis of the characteristics a country would need to show so there could be a bourgeois revolution, and then a revolution by the proletariat.

His book was called 'Das Kapital', and was based on observations made in Britain and Western Europe.

Russia didn't fit the characteristics for a Proletarian Revolution — the 'February' Revolution was bourgeois, and Marxism said the bourgeois state had to last some time before the proletariat could revolt.

Learn your theory — it's easy Marx

- You need to understand the theory so that you know how Lenin changed it in practice (see next page).
- Scribble a flow diagram of the stages of change — from a Feudal society to a Communist system.
- Remember the bourgeois revolution and the proletarian revolution were the means of change.

The Bolsheviks

The SDLP were the Marxist Party in Russia

In the late 1890s and early 1900s, the SDLP wanted to encourage the industrial workers in the towns to protest against their terrible living conditions. They hoped to create a situation where a Marxist revolution could take place — many of them were exiled by the Tsarist government.

The Bolsheviks came out of the SDLP

- 1) At the Social Democrat Conference of 1903, the SDLP quarrelled over whether to become a mass party, like the SRP, or to remain a small party of dedicated members working towards revolution. It was a question of the best way for the party to succeed.
- 2) The party split into Bolsheviks — meaning “the majority” — who wanted a small party and were led by Lenin, and Mensheviks — “the minority” — led by Martov, who wanted a mass party.
- 3) These names were given by Lenin — he called his group the majority so they would look like the larger party of the two. The name stuck even though the numbers of Bolsheviks and Mensheviks were almost the same at first.



Lenin (1870 - 1924)

Vladimir Ilyich Lenin was the Bolshevik leader. He was a clever thinker and a practical man — he knew how to take advantage of events.

The Bolsheviks were a small party

- 1) The Bolsheviks smuggled a newspaper into Russia called ‘Iskra’ (the Spark) to try to win support among industrial workers, but they were still too small a party to make much impact on the workers.
- 2) During the war, Lenin was in exile in Switzerland. When the February Revolution came he returned to Russia to rally the Bolshevik cause.
- 3) The Germans helped him to return in a sealed train in April 1917, because they hoped he would cause another revolution and that Russia would end the war.



Lenin's ‘April Theses’ urged revolution

- 1) When Lenin arrived in Russia, most people thought the Bolsheviks would support the Provisional Government's efforts to reform the Tsarist system.
- 2) Lenin issued a document called the April Theses, promising ‘Peace, Bread, Land and Freedom’.
- 3) He called for an end to the ‘capitalist’ war, and demanded that power should be given to the Soviets — elected committees of workers, peasants and soldiers which had started up in 1905 and had given leadership to the people during the February Revolution.
- 4) He demanded a Revolution against the Provisional Government as soon as possible — this wasn't a strict Marxist position. Lenin was adapting Marx to the Russian context, which is sometimes called Marxist-Leninism.



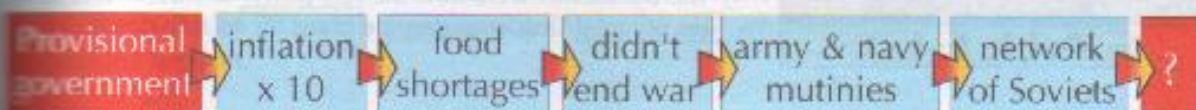
Peace, bread, land and freedom — but only if you revolt

It's important you understand this page — Lenin was the key figure for the Bolsheviks. Make sure you know how the Bolsheviks were formed and what they stood for. The April Theses are important too — no-one expected Lenin to attack the Provisional Government.

The Provisional Government

The Provisional Government had **problems**

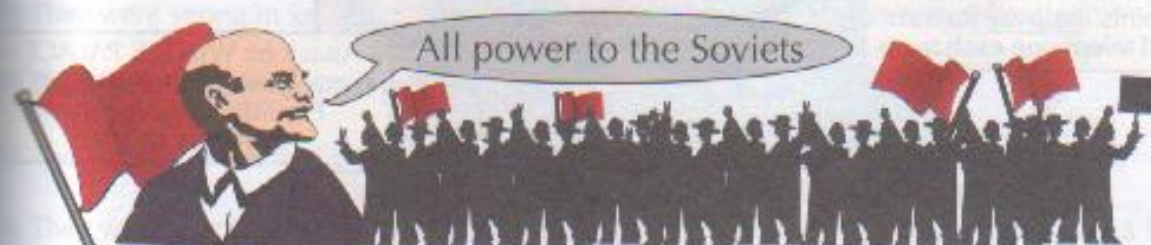
- 1 It wasn't supposed to stay in power — but the economic crisis made elections impossible.
- 2 Inflation grew even worse. By November 1917, prices were ten times higher than 1914.
- 3 Food shortages became worse and peasants began to seize land from noble estates.
- 4 The new government didn't end the war — soldiers and sailors began to mutiny.
- 5 A network of Soviets was established — the Petrograd Soviet became an alternative government. Key workers were told to strike to undermine the Provisional government.
- 6 The Petrograd Soviet issued 'Order No. 1' which said that soldiers shouldn't obey orders from the Provisional government if they were opposed by the Soviet.



The Soviets demanded an end to the war, but the army attacked the German forces on July 1st 1917. After early Russian success the Germans counter-attacked, forcing a retreat and the collapse of morale and discipline in the Russian army.

The Bolsheviks prepared for further revolution

The Bolsheviks gained increasing support among workers and soldiers with their slogan:



- 1 In July 1917, the Bolsheviks tried to take control of the government but were defeated and Lenin was forced to leave the country and flee to Finland. Kerensky had turned public opinion against him by accusing him of being a German agent.
- 2 Leon Trotsky set up the Red Guards — a Bolshevik military force. At the same time, the Bolsheviks won control of the Soviets, and Trotsky was made Chairman of the Petrograd Soviet.
- 3 Peasants attacked Kulaks and took land from the Church and nobles.
- 4 Many soldiers started to desert from the army and returned home to search for food.

Disasters on the battle field weakened the Provisional Government

In 1905, defeat in the war against Japan weakened the Tsar. The First World War did the same, but worse. Defeat was a major factor in the fall of the Tsar, and had a similar effect on the Provisional government, who continued to fight the Germans unsuccessfully. This left the door open for Lenin.

The Bolsheviks Seize Power

General Kornilov attempted a military coup

- 1) In September 1917, the Russian Commander in Chief, General Kornilov, turned his army back from the Front and marched against the Provisional Government determined to seize power.
- 2) Kerensky had to give weapons to the Bolsheviks and the Petrograd Soviet to save his Government from a military takeover.
- 3) Bolshevik railway workers and Red Guards were waiting to stop Kornilov's advance — but all his soldiers deserted him and he fled.
- 4) The Bolsheviks were now the real power in Russia, and Lenin encouraged Trotsky to prepare plans for seizing power.



The 'October' Revolution of 1917

The Bolshevik Central Committee under Lenin voted on October 23rd for revolution. Detailed plans were made by Trotsky to seize important buildings in Petrograd and arrest Ministers.



There were only 250,000 Bolsheviks in Russia, controlling a small part of the country — civil war was likely as there were many people who were opposed to Bolshevik rule.

Lenin was ruthless and determined to keep power. He knew a strong government was needed — so the ideals of Communism had to wait.

The Bolsheviks took advantage of events

It had all got pretty tense by 1917 — everybody was waiting for someone else to try and seize power. Draw a timeline for 1917, filling in the main events for each month, using the last six pages.

The Bolsheviks Seize Power

The Bolsheviks established control

- 1) The All-Russian Congress of Soviets gave power to the 15 Bolshevik People's Commissars under Lenin, on 8th November 1917.
- 2) Soldiers were sent into the countryside to seize grain to feed the towns.
- 3) The Bolsheviks controlled the main centres of power and used telegraph communications to spread their revolutionary message to local groups.
- 4) Elections were held for a new National Assembly. Bolsheviks won 175 seats out of 707, with most seats going to the SRP which had peasant support.
- 5) After one day the Red Guards closed down the Assembly — January 1918.
- 6) The Bolsheviks became the Communist Party, the only legal party in Russia.



The reasons for the Bolshevik success

- 1) They were strong in key political and administrative centres — especially Petrograd.
- 2) They had their own trained military force — the Red Guards.
- 3) They were ruthless and planned clear strategies — they were prepared for swift action.
- 4) They were practical — they recognised that the time for a true Marxist revolution was a long way off and so they changed their policies in order to seize power at the first chance. They claimed they ran a Socialist government which was trying to create the right conditions for Communism in the long term — so in the short term they could do whatever they liked.
- 5) The continuing problems of war and famine, and the breakdown of law and order weren't dealt with by the Provisional Government, who had become a weak target.
- 6) The vision and ability of Lenin — he was a quick-thinking leader who inspired his party.

The calendar problem...

This could save you a major Exam headache. The Russian calendar was behind the Western one at this time — by about two weeks. So the 'October' revolution was in our November, and the February Revolution in our March. Put a note by any date you use in the Exam saying which calendar you're using.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Why was Bloody Sunday significant?
- 2) What was the Duma?
- 3) What reforms did Stolypin introduce?
- 4) Summarise the key ideas of Karl Marx.
- 5) Give a definition of a "Soviet" (in the context of the 'February' Revolution).
- 6) Make a list of reasons for the Bolshevik success in November 1917.

Source A: From *A History of the Russian Revolution* by Leon Trotsky.

Nicholas II inherited from his ancestors not only a giant empire, but also a revolution. And they did not bequeath him one quality which would have made him capable of governing an empire or even a province or a country. People surrounding the Tsar often recalled after the revolution that in the most tragic moments of his reign... when all those around him were depressed, alarmed, shaken — Nicholas alone preserved his tranquility. That mask of indifference which was called breeding in certain circles, was a natural part of Nicholas from birth.

Source B: A first-hand account of the Russian front by a British Journalist, 1915.

Brussilov was the ablest of the army-group commanders. His front was in good order. For that reason we were sent to it. The impression I got in April was the Russian troops, all the men and most of the officers, were magnificent material who were being wasted because of the incompetence, intrigues and corruption of the men who governed the country.



Source C: Cartoon from a Russian newspaper, 1917.

Source D: A letter from Grand Duke Alexander Mikhailovich to Nicholas II, January 1917.

The unrest grows... those who defend the idea that Russia cannot exist without a Tsar lose the ground under their feet, since the fact of disorganisation and lawlessness are manifest. I repeat once more — it is impossible to rule the country without paying attention to the voice of the people, without meeting their needs...

Source E: Interview with a Russian farmer in the summer of 1917, recorded by a British journalist.

Our progress has been blocked by the war... Goods have gone up to ruinous rates. Already we are nearly out of horseshoes, axes, harrows, ploughs. Last spring we had not ploughs enough to do the needed ploughing, and that is why our crop is short. There is not enough rye in the district to take us through the winter, let alone feed the towns. And so the town people will starve for a while.

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to E** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) How reliable is **Source A** as evidence about Nicholas II's abilities as a ruler?

(6 marks)

- (b) Study **Source C**.

What does this picture suggest about the relationship between the Tsar and Rasputin?

(5 marks)

- (c) Study **Sources A, B and D**.

Do **Sources B and D** agree with the view of the Tsar given in **Source A**?

(8 marks)

- (d) Study **Source E** and use **your own knowledge** to answer this question.

How did economic problems contribute to the destabilisation of the Tsarist regime?

(9 marks)

- (e) Using **Sources A to E** and **your own knowledge** answer this question.

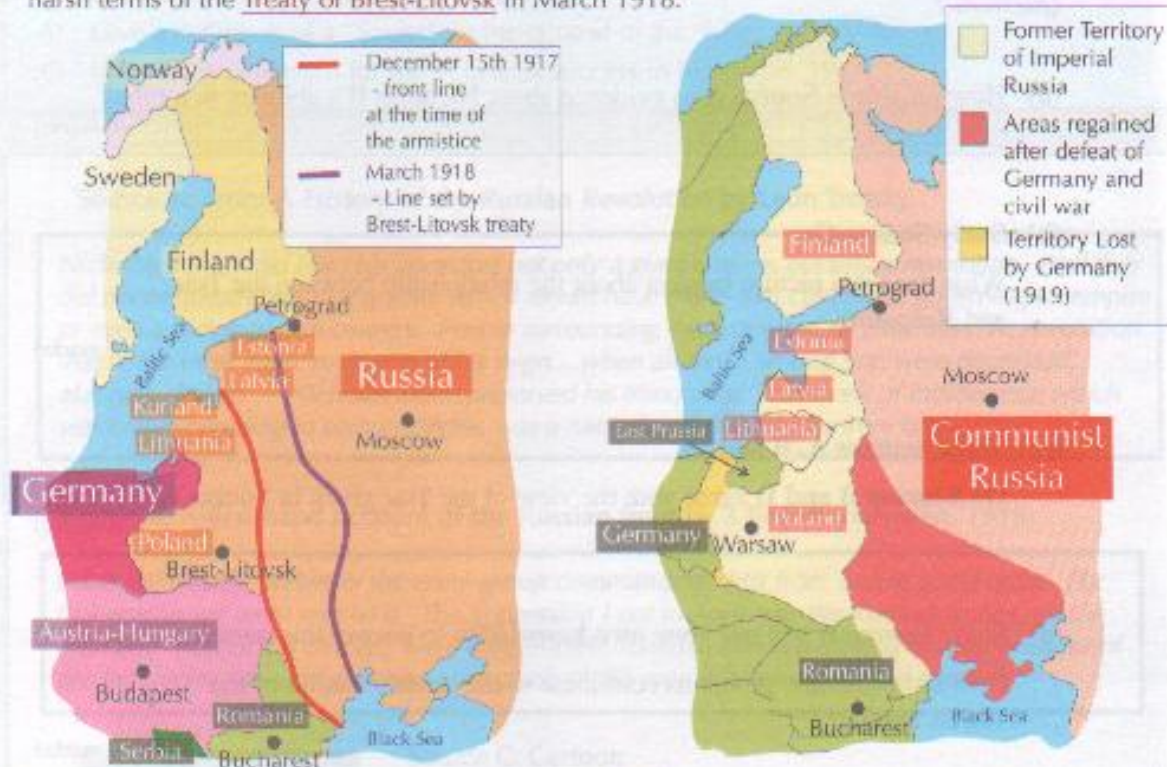
How important is the First World War in explaining why Nicholas II was forced to abdicate in 1917?

(12 marks)

1918 — Ending the German War

The Germans were advancing

- 1) The Bolsheviks signed an armistice with the Germans, hoping to delay the peace treaties because they thought there might be a Communist revolution in Germany too.
- 2) This didn't happen, and the German armies advanced — so the Bolsheviks quickly agreed to the harsh terms of the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk in March 1918.



Germany was defeated by the Western Allies later in 1918 and some lands were regained.

A Civil War was looming

Lenin and Trotsky were prepared for this. The reasons were:

- 1) The Communists had seized power suddenly and repressed the elected National Assembly — they had also outlawed political opposition, so many people saw them as a danger.
- 2) Anti-Communist army officers were no longer fighting Germany — many were Royalists and wanted the return of the Tsar — and now they could attack the Communists.
- 3) Communism wanted a world revolution — the Comintern (Third International) was formed under the Bolshevik Zinoviev to promote revolution abroad and to encourage friendly governments in nearby European countries.



**The Government moved from Petrograd to Moscow in March 1918.
Leon Trotsky began to build an efficient Red Army to fight the civil war.**

The Civil War — it was just one thing after another in Russia

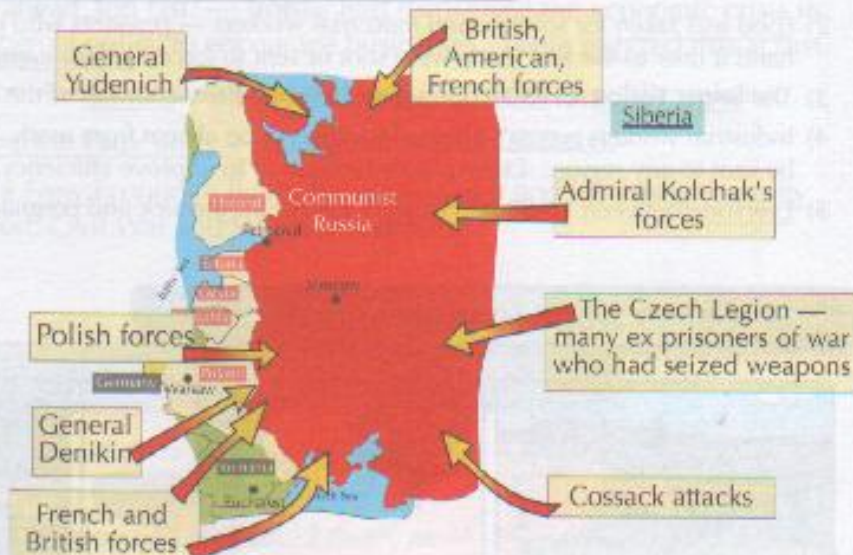
Three big reasons for the Civil War, and you need to learn them now. Civil War was the last thing Russia needed, but the Communists knew it was coming, which was why they made peace with Germany at any cost.

The Civil War 1918-1920

The war began in the spring of 1918 and lasted until the end of 1920.

Anti-Communist forces surrounded Red Russia

1. These armies were called the **'Whites'** — the colour of the Tsarist state.
2. There were many White groups who often had different aims and purposes — a key problem.
3. Britain, France and the USA sent troops to help the Whites — trying to restart the Eastern Front against Germany, and worried by Communist ideas of world revolution.



Reasons for the Red Army victory

1. Red forces were united, while White forces were divided and didn't work together to surround their enemy — this meant the Reds could fight the White armies one by one, instead of fighting on several fronts at the same time. Trotsky was also a brilliant leader.
2. White forces were a long way apart and couldn't stay in touch to coordinate attacks. Some had different political opinions — which meant they didn't want to work together.
3. Patriotic Russians supported the Reds — the Whites were led by nobles and foreign armies.
4. Foreign military support was soon withdrawn as it became clear the Reds would win.
5. The Communists controlled the main cities and communications systems — and the railways.
6. The strict and ruthless laws of War Communism (see next page) helped obtain supplies for the Reds.
7. When the Red Army had defeated its enemies in Russia it carried on and pushed into Poland, hoping to link up with Communists in Germany to spread revolution throughout Europe — but it was defeated by the Poles outside Warsaw in late 1920, ending the Civil War.

The Tsar and his family were killed

1. The Tsar and his family were held prisoner in a basement at Ekaterinburg, because the Communists knew they were an important symbol for the White cause. The official version says they were executed as White forces approached the town.
2. There are many arguments among historians about whether some of the family, including Anastasia (the Tsar's daughter) were actually able to escape by train. Several people later claimed to be Anastasia.



The Red Army had united aims and leadership

Plenty for you to learn here — looking at the map you'd have thought the Whites would win easily. Focus on the Whites' lack of coordination and the strength of Communist control.

War Communism and Mutiny

War Communism — a *strict system to win the war*

- 1) Farms and factories were put under state control — private trade was banned.
- 2) Food was taken for soldiers and industrial workers — peasants who refused to hand it over to the Red Army were shot or sent to forced labour camps.
- 3) The Secret Police (CHEKA) hunted and executed any enemies of the state.
- 4) Industrial workers weren't allowed to strike or be absent from work. They could be sent to any region. Experts were brought in to improve efficiency.
- 5) Everyone between 16-60 had to work except for the sick and pregnant women.

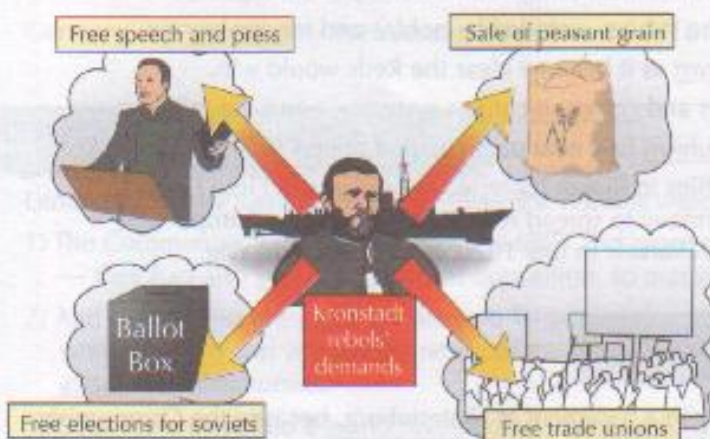


The results were *famine and decline*



The *Kronstadt naval base* mutinied

The sailors were unhappy with the lack of progress, the famine and the terror. They mutinied and seized the base near Petrograd, in March 1921.



- 1) The Kronstadt sailors had supported the Communists in 1917 — especially Trotsky's leadership in Petrograd.
- 2) Despite this, Lenin and Trotsky were worried that dissent might spread when the ice around the island base thawed and let the sailors leave.
- 3) Trotsky ordered the Red Army to put down the mutiny.
- 4) The Red Army attacked losing many men, but captured it in a brutal battle.
- 5) Many rebels were killed in the fighting — those who were left were executed afterwards as traitors.

There were other revolts — peasants in Tambov Province robbed food convoys and many factories suffered strikes and unrest.

Revolts — a sure sign that things needed to change

The Kronstadt sailors had been among the Communist's strongest supporters. Their rebellion showed that even those sympathetic to Communism thought things were going wrong in Russia.

The New Economic Policy

Lenin decided to *change* Communist policy

- 1) Communism was pushing ahead 'too fast' — Trotsky had recognised the economic crisis in 1920 and suggested a change of policy to encourage businesses. Lenin rejected this at first.
- 2) Now the Civil War was won, the Communists needed to keep control of public opinion.
- 3) This meant a policy of complete Party unity — no dissent or splits allowed.
- 4) In 1921 Lenin introduced a New Economic Policy to restore order and increase prosperity after the chaos of Revolution, Civil War and War Communism.

The New Economic Policy *reversed* War Communism

- 1) Peasants could sell surplus food produce and pay tax on profits.
- 2) It allowed the setting up of small businesses, like shops and small factories, that weren't state-owned and could therefore make a profit.
- 3) Vital industries such as coal, iron, steel, railways, shipping and finance stayed in state hands. But here experts were brought in on higher salaries, and extra wages were paid for efficiency.



The NEP allowed economic recovery — by 1928 industrial and food production levels were about the same as in 1914, and some people grew rich

Communist political control grew

- 1) A 'purge' in 1921 expelled about 1/3 of Party members who didn't agree with Lenin.
- 2) Communist governments were imposed in areas recaptured in the Civil War such as the Ukraine, against the will of independent nationalists in these areas.
- 3) In 1924 a new constitution established the USSR — Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.
- 4) Each Republic had a government with some policy freedom, but they all had to be Communist, and the system was run centrally by the Politburo — the senior council.

The NEP was almost 'anti-communist'

War Communism had banned private trade and put all factories under state control. The NEP actually reversed some of these communist economic practices. Many Communists saw it as a step backwards.

Lenin

Lenin died on Jan 21st, 1924

He had a stroke in 1922 and was no longer able to rule.
Petrograd became Leningrad in his honour.

1870	Lenin born.
1898	First Congress of the Russian Soviet Democratic Workers Party.
1903	Bolsheviks split from Mensheviks.
1917	First Revolution — Provisional Government (Kerensky). April — Lenin outlines plans to overthrow Government. July — Bolshevik rising defeated. November — Bolshevik Communist revolution and takeover.
1918	March — Peace treaty with Germany (Brest-Litovsk)
1918-20	Civil War. Reds vs Whites.
1920-21	Famine. Kronstadt rebellion. New Economic Policy.
1922	Lenin ill. Policy led by Stalin, Zinoviev and Kamenev.

Lenin's key strengths as a leader

- 1) His organization and leadership of the Bolshevik party transformed it.
- 2) He had a pragmatic and realistic approach to problems.
- 3) He was able to 'seize the moment' which was vital to the Bolsheviks gaining power.
- 4) He could be ruthless — he set up the CHEKA (Secret Police) and the labour camps. He also wasn't afraid to use force to put down the Kronstadt mutiny.
- 5) He was able to change his policies — e.g. he was able to adopt War Communism to win the Civil War, and then to introduce the NEP afterwards to help the economy recover.

Never underestimate Lenin's importance

Lenin was a real driving force behind the Bolshevik Party. Make sure you know specific examples of how he personally contributed to their success. And don't forget to learn Lenin's five key strengths.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List three reasons why the Civil War was inevitable by 1918.
- 2) What advantage did the Whites have over the Red Army from the start of the Civil War?
- 3) Why did the Reds win the Civil War?
- 4) What were the aims, method and outcome of War Communism?
- 5) In what way did Lenin's NEP go against Communist ideas?
- 6) What were Lenin's strengths as a leader? (Try to think of at least four).

Source A: Lenin speaking in 1921.

"The essence of ... 'War Communism' was that we actually took from the peasant all the surplus grain and sometimes even not only surplus grain, but part of the grain the peasant required for food — to meet the requirements of the army and sustain the workers ... We were forced to resort to 'War Communism' by war and ruin."

Source B: Table showing industrial and agricultural production in 1913 and 1921.

	1913	1921
Grain	80 million tons	37.6 million tons
Coal	29 million tons	9 million tons
Oil	9.2 million tons	3.8 million tons
Iron	4.2 million tons	0.1 million tons
Steel	4.3 million tons	0.2 million tons
Sugar	1.3 million tons	0.05 million tons
Electricity	2039 million kW	520 million kW

Source C: Victor Serge, *Memoirs of a Revolutionary* (1945).

"The New Economic Policy was, in the space of a few months, already giving marvellous results. From one week to the next, the famine and the speculation were diminishing perceptibly. Restaurants were opening again and, wonder of wonders, pastries which were actually edible were on sale at a rouble apiece. The public was beginning to recover its breath, and people were apt to talk about the return of capitalism, which was synonymous with prosperity."



Source D:
A Russian painting called
'Lenin with Villagers'.

Exam Question

- 1** Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a)** Study **Source A**.

How does Lenin attempt to justify War Communism?

(5 marks)

- (b)** Using **Source B** and **your own knowledge** explain the impact of War Communism on agriculture and industry.

(6 marks)

- (c)** Use **Source C** and **your own knowledge** to answer this question.

Source C describes the NEP as a "return to Capitalism".

In what way do you think that this statement is true?

(8 marks)

- (d)** Source D is a painting by a Communist. How reliable is this source as evidence of Lenin's popularity with the peasant population? Explain your answer using **Source D** and **your own knowledge**.

(9 marks)

- (e)** Using the sources and **your own knowledge** explain why Lenin abandoned War Communism and introduced the NEP. What impact did this have on the Russian economy?

(12 marks)

The Struggle for Power

Several leaders struggled to succeed Lenin

- 1. **TROTSKY** was the most able, and popular with the army and Party members. He led the Red Army brilliantly during the Civil War, but some people thought he was too arrogant and he lacked support in the Politburo. He had been a Menshevik and he often made enemies.
 - 2. **ZINOVIEV** and **KAMENEV** were left-wingers who agreed with Trotsky's ideas about State control of land and continuing the revolution. But they were determined to stop Trotsky becoming Party leader. Zinoviev was a popular man and had been a friend of Lenin.
 - 3. **STALIN** didn't seem likely to lead the party. He had accumulated power through good organization 'behind the scenes' in his work as General Secretary of the Party.
- Lenin's Testament talked about who might succeed him — he said Trotsky was arrogant but able and said Stalin should be removed from office because he was too rude and ambitious.

Trotsky and Stalin had a war of ideas



Leon Trotsky

...wanted Revolution to spread to other countries — he called for the USSR to work for a world revolution.



Joseph Stalin

...and most of the Party wanted a period of peace and rebuilding in the USSR — 'Communism in one country'.

Lenin left a power vacuum

After Lenin's death there was no obvious leader that everyone could agree to follow. Trotsky and Stalin emerged as the most likely contenders — it would be Trotsky's idealism versus Stalin's pragmatism...

The Struggle for Power

How **Stalin** made himself **all-powerful**

- 1) Stalin controlled the Party — he appointed people loyal to him to senior Party positions.
- 2) This meant Stalin's rivals had no support in the Party, and he was able to suppress Lenin's Testament.
- 3) Only Party members could hold government positions and they were chosen by Party voting.
- 4) By the late 1920s Stalin had enough Party support to have his rivals voted out of power and eventually thrown out of the Party altogether.

Stalin destroyed the Leftists and the Rightists

- 1) Stalin joined Zinoviev and Kamenev against Trotsky — who was dismissed as Commissar for War in 1924. 'Communism in one country' became Party policy in 1925.
- 2) Trotsky was isolated — and thrown out of the Communist Party in 1927.
- 3) New members were elected to the Politburo who were loyal to Stalin. At this time Stalin supported the NEP and gradual reform of the economy — the 'leftist' Zinoviev and Kamenev were dismissed from the Politburo in 1926 because they believed in fast economic modernisation (one of Trotsky's main ideas). They joined Trotsky to protest against Stalin and were exiled in 1928.
- 4) Trotsky was also exiled to Siberia in 1928, and forced to leave the USSR in 1929.
- 5) But in 1928 Stalin adopted fast modernisation instead of NEP (see next page). This swing to the left meant he could now remove the leading figures on the 'right' of the party, such as Bukharin and Rykov who supported NEP, and could have been a threat to his position.
- 6) By 1930 he was in complete control as leader of the Party and the USSR.

Stalin changed the revolution

All pretty amazing really — Stalin managed to surprise his enemies. Don't forget that the key factor in his rise was Party control. Make sure you remember the Party wasn't the same as the government. But the USSR's constitution could be abused by anyone controlling the Party.

The Five Year Plans

The USSR still had a poor economy

- 1 The NEP had made some progress, but more rapid growth was needed for the USSR to catch up with the industrialised Western countries and their economies.
- 2 Stalin adopted Trotsky's ideas about a programme of fast state-controlled modernisation to speed up production. Lenin's policy of NEP was dropped.
- 3 The state took over planning for industry and agriculture with a commission called Gosplan to set targets for achievement.
- 4 A Five Year Plan set targets for all basic industrial factories and workers.

1928-33: The First Five-Year Plan



- 1 The Plan concentrated on basic heavy industry — coal, steel, railways electricity, machinery.
- 2 Actual production figures were lower than the targets, but remarkable growth in output was achieved.
- 3 Factories were built beyond the Ural mountains — so any Western invader couldn't reach them easily.

The Five Year Plans were very ambitious

The Five Year plans were real achievements. The economic growth they produced was really impressive. Targets were not always reached, but they were set at very, very ambitious levels.

The Five Year Plans

*In 1932 a **Second Five-Year Plan** was started*

- 1) Some parts of this plan were achieved, but fear at the rise of Adolf Hitler in Nazi Germany meant more development took place in the armaments industry than any other.
- 2) A third 5-year plan was planned for 1937 but was even more disrupted by war preparation, and the German invasion of 1941.

In under 10 years, the USSR had almost doubled its industrial output — the price was misery and low living standards for Soviet workers.

*There were **serious problems** with the plans*

- 1) New towns, cities and industrial zones were set up — often with poor quality housing and amenities.

- 2) Long hours were worked for low pay, and higher wages were offered to foreign workers with special skills required to work on new schemes.

- 3) Bonuses were given for workers who could improve upon production targets as an inspiration to others — e.g. Alexei Stakhanov, whose coal mining team dramatically increased its output — but these were often unrealistic targets for most workers.



- 4) Much of the work was done by the inmates of forced Labour Camps — criminals and political prisoners.

- 5) The targets were propaganda tools — the government said they'd been broken but often it's hard to tell how much was really achieved and how much was just propaganda.

The Five Year Plans came at a price

You need to know your facts and figures. The Five Year plans were successful, but remember the five big problems. The economy grew well, but few workers saw any of the benefits.

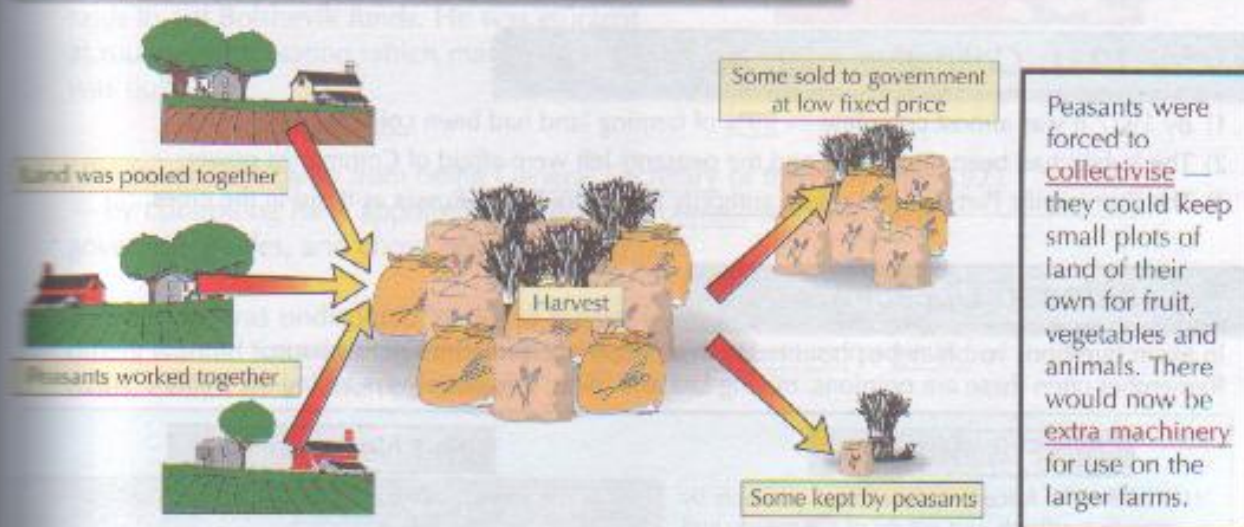
Collectivisation

Food production had to be increased

- 1) It was vital to increase the food supplies to workers in the towns and cities or the Five-year plans wouldn't succeed.
- 2) Millions of peasants hid food away and didn't support the Communists.
- 3) They were often poor and had no time-saving equipment.
- 4) Many richer peasants, or Kulaks, were influential in the villages, which annoyed the local Communist Party secretaries.



In 1929 Stalin began collectivising all farms



There were Problems with Collectivisation

- 1) The speed of change required would destroy the traditional peasant way of life.
- 2) The peasants resisted this change and didn't want to give up lands — especially the kulaks.
- 3) The collectives were forced to grow particular crops needed for industry, export or food for workers and they had to supply a specific amount to the state, whether the harvest was good or bad. Party officials were brought in to run collectives — this was resented.

Stalin declared war on the Kulaks

- 1) Some of the peasants refused to collectivise, and Stalin blamed the Kulaks.
- 2) Stalin sent troops to attack what he called these 'enemies of the people'.
- 3) An estimated 10 million were shot or sent to the labour camps — many died from starvation or cold either on the way to such camps or during their time working there.
- 4) Some villages were surrounded and destroyed — many Kulaks burned their own crops, and killed livestock. This helped to cause a famine in the Ukraine where 5 million people died.
- 5) 1930 saw famine and a poor harvest, and collectivisation was halted briefly.

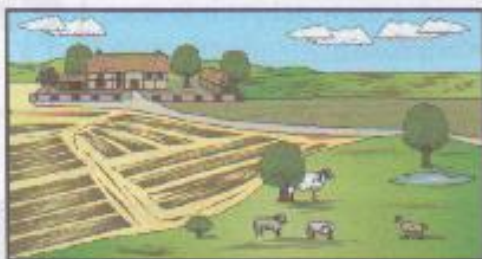
Putting the farms together — a collective disaster

Collectivisation was meant to help the Five-Year Plans. Learn the main problems with collectivisation. Stalin looked for someone to blame when things went wrong — the Kulaks were convenient scapegoats.

The Results of Collectivisation

The famine continued into 1932-33

Millions were dead or deported. Grain production was down and animal numbers had fallen.



After 1931, Collectivisation began again

- 1) By 1937 it was almost complete — 99% of farming land had been collectivised.
- 2) The Kulaks had been eliminated and the peasants left were afraid of Communist power.
- 3) The Communist Party held absolute authority throughout rural Russia as it did in the cities.

Two sides to Collectivisation

In exam questions you may be presented with different interpretations of this issue. Remember often these are opinions, mixing fact and ideas, and not always telling the truth:

The Positive View

- 1) It ended the forced exploitation of peasants by greedy landlords and got rid of the greedy and troublesome Kulaks.
- 2) It helped peasants work together.
- 3) It provided large-scale organisation of food production for the farms.
- 4) This was Communism in practice.
- 5) Soviet propaganda showed collective farms as a triumph for the state, and created a myth of the happy worker.

The Negative View

- 1) The changes were enforced by the army and by law — there was no choice.
- 2) The Kulaks were scapegoats for inefficient food production in the past.
- 3) The policy led to the murder and deportation of millions of people to prisons and labour camps.
- 4) The new system didn't work at first and a bad harvest combined with Kulaks destroying crops and animals caused a serious famine — killing more people.

State farms were an extension of collective farms

- 1) Land was owned completely by the state, and peasants worked as labourers — so they received wages even if the farm did badly.
- 2) Food was delivered to the state, and farm workers bought food with their wages.
- 3) This was closer to the communist ideal than the collective, but they were very expensive to establish and run. Few farms of this type existed by 1940.

You'll only get the marks for an essay if you cover all sides of the argument — so learn to recognise hidden opinions in any sources.

Propaganda and scapegoats — Stalin's key tactics

Learn the two views of Collectivisation. Remember that neither side is pure fact — they're mixed with opinions. You need to tell opinions from fact in the Exam, and use them to give a balanced answer.

The Terror and the Purges

Stalin was ruthless in destroying rivals

- 1 Born in 1879 in the Republic of Georgia, his real name was Joseph Jughashvili. He had studied to become a priest, but became a Bolshevik. He changed his name to Stalin ('man of steel') when he was imprisoned as a revolutionary.
- 2 He was an organizer who began by making speeches, and organizing strikes and bank raids to aid Bolshevik funds. He was efficient at routine organisation which many thought was dull.
- 3 His power base came from being General Secretary of the Party after 1922 — by controlling Party appointments he could control who was given government roles, and chose people loyal to him.
- 4 By 1930 he was undisputed leader of Russia, but he became terrified that others wanted to overthrow him — this made him determined to get rid of rivals, even if they weren't a threat.



The Kirov murder began a purge

- 1 Kirov was the popular head of the Party in Leningrad — he was murdered in 1934.
- 2 Some historians think Stalin was responsible for his death — in 1956 Stalin's successor, Khrushchev, blamed Stalin for the murder, but there is no clear proof.
- 3 Immediately afterwards, Stalin ordered a purge of people he believed were involved in a conspiracy against Kirov and against himself — but Kirov's murderer was never put on trial.
- 4 'Old' Communists like Zinoviev and Kamenev were arrested and charged in "Show Trials". They were forced by torture or threats to confess to betraying Stalin, between 1935-36.
- 5 No-one knows exactly what was true and what was invented by Stalin's torturers.
- 6 One claim was that the exiled Trotsky was plotting with senior leaders to take power.

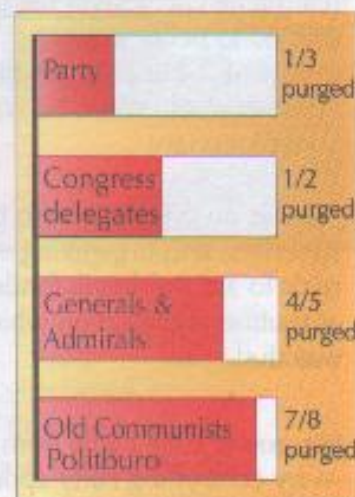
The Purges — a vicious circle

Under torture people invented all sorts of plots to try to save themselves — so Stalin started to believe there really was a plot against him. Read sources on the Purges carefully, in case people were lying out of fear.

The Terror and the Purges

Soon the Purges reached ordinary people

- 1) Anyone suspected of disloyalty to Stalin was taken away by the NKVD (the new secret police).
- 2) Most were shot or sent to labour camps.
- 3) People who wanted to avoid arrest did so by providing information about others — even if it was false.
- 4) By 1939 approximately 3 million people had been killed and 9 million were political prisoners.
- 5) Stalin's wife killed herself (or was murdered) in 1932, after a purge at the University where she was a teacher.
- 6) In 1937 the exiled Trotsky condemned Stalin's Purges from his home in Mexico, calling for a new revolution. In 1940 he was murdered by one of Stalin's agents.



Stalin controlled all information



- 1) Artists and writers had to follow the Party line, creating 'useful' art for the workers.
- 2) Newspapers, cinema and radio spread propaganda about the heroic workers' struggle and Stalin's great leadership and personality. Criticism was banned.
- 3) History was re-written so that Stalin became more important in the story of the October Revolution than he really had been at the time.
- 4) Trotsky became a 'non-person' — his name was removed from history books and articles and his picture was rubbed out of old photos as though he had never existed.
- 5) Photographs were altered to show Stalin as a close friend and ally of Lenin.

Top Tip — Source Material in the Exams could be propaganda — opinion and not just fact. To get top marks you've got to say which facts are true and which ones aren't, and explain what opinion the source expresses.

Be careful with Soviet sources

Really make sure you learn all about the ways that Stalin controlled information. It's vital that you understand the kind of pressure Soviet authors and artists were under when you analyse a Soviet source.

Stalin the Dictator

The results of the Purges

The terror slowed down by the end of the 1930s, but it had serious consequences:

- 1) Many of the most gifted and able citizens had disappeared — killed or sent to camps.
- 2) The army and navy was seriously weakened by the loss of most senior officers.
- 3) Industrial and technical progress was hampered by the loss of top scientists and engineers.
- 4) In 1936 a new Constitution was brought in — every 4 years there were elections and only official Party candidates were allowed to stand. Power was kept in the Politburo.

Communist attitudes to the church

Religion was called the 'opium of the people' by Marx.

- 1) The Russian Orthodox Church had been a powerful supporter of the Tsar.
- 2) The Communist government began to take Church property and land — these were valuable assets for the Party. Christians were persecuted as a political threat to Communism and priests were murdered or exiled.
- 3) In 1929 the Church was banned from any activity except leading worship.
- 4) By 1939 a few hundred Churches remained active — the state claimed the promise of free conscience in the 1936 constitution was being honoured.
- 5) Many people were still believers — nearly half the population in 1940.



Stalin's Russia was a dictatorship

- 1) Stalin ran everything — his policies were often completely different from Communist ideas.
- 2) Party 'apparatchiks' — members loyal to Stalin — received privileges like holidays, flats etc.
- 3) Most people lived in fear but were unable to speak out.

Compare Stalin's dictatorship with Adolf Hitler's in Nazi Germany (see Section Six) — this is a big favourite with Examiners.

The 'opium of the people' — still a source of inspiration

The key to studying history is learning to read sources. People forget that these don't always tell the truth. Your job is to find out why a source gives a particular opinion, and why it may ignore some of the facts.

International Affairs 1918-1939

Communist Russia had been an outcast country

- 1) After World War I, Russian Communism was seen as a danger especially after failed Communist revolts in Eastern Europe — countries like France and Britain were afraid of world revolution and had sent troops to help the White forces in the Civil War (see P. 133).
- 2) Russia also had many debts to the West dating from the Tsarist period — so Lenin was refused any Western aid during the Famine of 1920-21 (see P. 134).
- 3) Soviet Russia was not invited to the first meeting of the League of Nations in 1922, as many countries still hadn't recognised that the Communist government was legal.
- 4) During the 1920s there were attempted revolutions and strikes in several Western countries, so the West feared the workers even more — a supposed letter from Zinoviev to the Labour party in Britain in 1924 gave instructions for a revolution, which caused a major political scandal.
- 5) Gradually better relations were established and trading agreements made with other countries, including Germany. The rise of Hitler and the Nazi party after 1933 meant Stalin took the threat of a stronger Germany very seriously.

THE USSR ON THE WORLD STAGE IN THE 1930s.



Britain and France remained afraid of the U.S.S.R. Communism & ideas of World Revolution

The USSR helped the Republican cause during the Spanish Civil War by supplying them with weapons in their fight against the Fascist troops of Franco (Section 4). The Fascists were helped by Hitler and Mussolini — so battle lines were drawn between Communism and Fascism.

But Britain and France didn't stop Germany taking over Czechoslovakia in 1938-39, so Stalin decided to make a deal with Hitler.

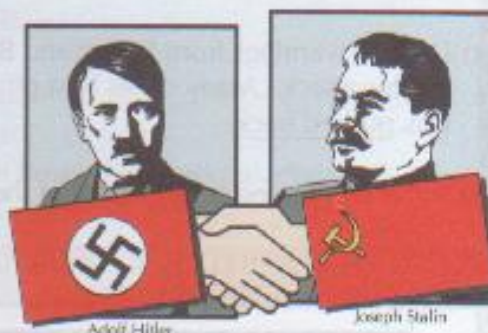
Communist Russia was viewed with suspicion

Western governments were worried about possible Communist uprisings in their own countries. This was not helped by some Soviet leaders like Trotsky calling for Marxist revolutions to take place worldwide.

International Affairs 1918-1939

The Nazi-Soviet Pact of 1939

- 1) When Britain and France refused to join the USSR against the Germans, Stalin decided to make an agreement with Hitler.
- 2) A deal was reached by Molotov and Von Ribbentrop in July 1939 — it said that Germany and the USSR wouldn't fight each other, so Germany wouldn't have to fight on two fronts as in World War I.
- 3) A secret section allowed for the division of Poland between Germany and Russia. Stalin knew that Russia wasn't ready for a war with Nazi Germany, and he hoped to avoid any involvement in the coming European War.



Adolf Hitler

Joseph Stalin

The USSR was trying to win back territory

Areas taken by
Soviet Russia
1939 - 1940

Germany attacks
Poland. Second
World War starts



- 1) The USSR attacked Finland and the Baltic States on 15th September 1939.
- 2) This was an effort to win back lands that had been lost in the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk (P. 132).
- 3) Though they were outnumbered, the Finns held out and embarrassed the Red Army — the USSR eventually took some territory in South Finland before peace was made.
- 4) The USSR was expelled from the League of Nations, but by then the rest of Europe was already at war.

Japan was seen as another threat

- 1) Japan was at war with China in the East, and Stalin feared Japanese expansion.
- 2) Russia had been beaten in a war with Japan in 1905 (P. 121).
- 3) The USSR signed a neutrality pact with Japan in April 1941, avoiding war.



Stalin hoped to avoid involvement in the war, which would allow the USSR time to build up industrial strength through the Five-Year Plans.

You need to view events from all angles

Make sure you understand things from different points of view — like learning about the Nazi-Soviet pact from the Soviet view, the German view, and the view in the rest of Europe.

The War of the Motherland

Germany attacked in June 1941

- 1) Operation Barbarossa had been secretly planned in 1940 — Hitler hoped to destroy the Communist system and exploit the USSR's natural resources (see P. 177).
- 2) Despite warnings from Soviet and British intelligence, Stalin was completely unprepared for this attack. Many of his best officers had been purged, and the weakened Red Army was pushed back.
- 3) Stalin was forced to free some of the officers from the labour camps.
- 4) By the end of 1941, the Germans had surrounded Leningrad and reached Moscow's outskirts.



Stalin rallied the country

- 1) Things looked desperate, but a harsh winter halted the German advance.
- 2) Soviet industry was intact — factories were too far away for capture.
- 3) Stalin rallied the people for a patriotic effort, and all industry was geared to winning the war — but progress was set back as machines were worn out in producing weapons and goods, while farmland and crops were destroyed by the Germans.
- 4) Leningrad held out and in 1942 the Germans were stopped at Stalingrad and surrounded by the Red Army. After six months they were forced to surrender — in early 1943.
- 5) By 1944 the Red Army had pushed the Germans out of Russia and were chasing them back to Germany, liberating Eastern Europe from the Nazis as they went.
- 6) It's estimated about 20 million Soviet soldiers died fighting the Germans.



The USSR fought the bulk of the German army for much of the war

A final few facts for you to learn — and they're really important ones too. Despite the Nazi-Soviet Pact, Hitler invaded the USSR and nearly caught Stalin out. Remember the main reasons why Russia has always been hard to conquer — it's a huge country and it has very harsh winters. Stalin's leadership was also a key factor — scribble a list of his good and bad effects.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Who were the main contenders to replace Lenin as leader after his death in 1924?
- 2) How did Stalin destroy opposition from the Left and the Right in the years 1924-8?
- 3) a) What did Stalin hope to achieve with his 5 Year Plans?
b) Did he succeed?
- 4) What was Collectivisation?
- 5) Who were the kulaks and why were they so unpopular?
- 6) Draw a time-line 1933-45. Mark on the key events in Russia's international affairs.
- 7) How did the Purges help Stalin to stay in power?

Source A: Comments on the assassination of Kirov by Alexander Orlov who was a NKVD officer who escaped to the United States.

Stalin decided to arrange for the assassination of Kirov and to lay the crime at the door of the former leaders of the opposition and thus with one blow do away with Lenin's former comrades. Stalin came to the conclusion that, if he could prove that Zinoviev and Kamenev and other leaders of the opposition had shed the blood of Kirov, "the beloved son of the party", a member of the Politburo, he then would be justified in demanding blood for blood.

Source B: Nadexhada Khazina, extract from *'Hope against Hope'*, 1971.

In the period of the Yezhov terror — the mass arrests came in waves of varying intensity — there must sometimes have been no more room in the jails, and to those of us still free it looked as though the highest wave had passed and the terror was abating. After each show trial, people sighed, "Well, it's all over at last." What they meant was: "Thank God, it looks as though I've escaped." But then there would be a new wave, and the same people would rush to heap abuse on the "enemies of the people".

Source C: Extract from a poem by Osip Mandelstam written in 1933 about Stalin (the "Kremlin Mountaineer"). The poem resulted in Mandelstam being sent to a NKVD labour camp where he died.

*We live, deaf to the land beneath us,
Ten steps away no one hears our speeches,
All we hear is the Kremlin mountaineer,
The murderer and peasant-slayer.
His fingers are fat as grubs
And the words, final as lead weights, fall from his lips,
His cockroach whiskers leer
And his boot tops gleam.
Around him a rabble of thin-necked leaders —
fawning half-men for him to play with.
...And every killing is a treat*



Source D:
Painting called *'Roses for Stalin'* by
Boris Ieremeevich Vladimirov, 1949.

Exam Question

- 1** Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) According to **Source A** what reasons did Stalin have for arranging Kirov's assassination?

(5 marks)

- (b) What were the "show trials" mentioned in **Source B**?

(3 marks)

- (c) Study **Source C**.

What criticisms does the poet make of Stalin and how does this explain why he was sent to the Labour Camp?

(6 marks)

- (d) Compare **Source D** with **Sources A and C**.

- (i) How does the impression of Stalin in **Source D** differ from the views presented in **Sources A and C**?
- (ii) How reliable is **Source D**?

(9 marks)

- (e) Using **your own knowledge**, answer the following question:

How important was propaganda to Stalin's control over the Russian people?

(12 marks)

Revision Summary

This is a really big topic. Make sure you know the order of events and be careful about mixing facts and opinions — especially with source questions. Give all sides of the story.

- 1) Describe briefly the characteristics of the main groups in Russian Society in 1917.
- 2) Give three reasons why the Tsar was unpopular by 1917.
- 3) Explain the impact that the First World War had on Russia.
- 4) What is meant by saying the first February Revolution was a 'spontaneous event'?
- 5) Why was Kerensky's Government increasingly unpopular?
- 6) Why were Communists split into Bolsheviks and Mensheviks?
- 7) What were the main beliefs of the Communists?
- 8) What were the 'April Theses'; and the 'July Days'?
- 9) How did the Bolsheviks seize power in Oct/Nov 1917?
- 10) What happened at Brest-Litovsk?
- 11) Why were the Bolsheviks prepared to agree to Brest-Litovsk?
- 12) Consider the events of the Civil War — why did the 'Reds' win and the 'Whites' lose?
- 13) What were the main features of 'War Communism'?
- 14) What were the results of the Civil War on the economy, farming and industry?
- 15) What was the Kronstadt rebellion and how was it dealt with?
- 16) Note the main features of the New Economic Policy, and its results.
- 17) Write a short summary of Lenin's achievements (remember he died in 1924).
- 18) What was the main difference in ideas between Stalin and Trotsky?
- 19) Why was Joseph Stalin able to win the struggle for power?
- 20) Explain or make a diagram to show the aim and impact of the first 5-year plan.
- 21) Why did Stalin want to get rid of the kulaks in the countryside?
- 22) Make summary notes/diagrams to explain how a collective farm worked.
- 23) Why were many peasants opposed to a collective farm system?
- 24) Why was the early 1930s a time of famine again?
- 25) Sum up what the Communist view of Collectivisation would be.
- 26) What were the Purges? Give examples of action taken by Stalin.
- 27) What were some of the results of Purges by 1939?
- 28) How were Religion and the Church changed by Stalin's rule?
- 29) What were the main aims of Soviet Foreign Policy after 1933?
- 30) Why did Stalin increasingly turn away from agreements with Britain and France?
- 31) Why was the Nazi-Soviet pact in the interest of both countries at the time?
- 32) Use your knowledge of Nazi Germany and the Second World War to show if Stalin should have been better prepared for 1941 and 'Operation Barbarossa'.
- 33) 'There would have been no Revolution in Russia without the First World War'.
Give the main arguments to support this view.
- 34) The life of the peasants and workers 'had got worse under communism'.
Give three points to support this view.
- 35) Compare briefly the work and importance of Lenin, Trotsky and Stalin.

The USA's Reaction to World War One

After the First World War America chose not to get involved in international affairs. This policy was known as Isolationism.

The League was the idea of the American President

The League of Nations was largely the creation of the American president Woodrow Wilson. It was one of his Fourteen Points and he was sure that such a body could prevent another world war. The League would act like a world parliament where the representatives of all the major powers would meet to discuss matters of international importance.



Woodrow Wilson

But America never joined the League of Nations



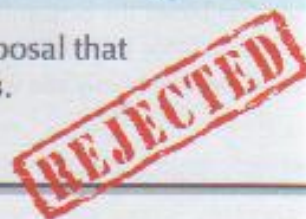
Wilson wanted the USA to join the League, but he needed the approval of the US Congress. The problem was that most Americans didn't want to join. The majority of the American people favoured 'Isolationism' — they wanted the USA to remain isolated from foreign entanglements.

There were several reasons for this:

1. Many Americans had been against the USA getting involved in the First World War and had been upset by the loss of American lives. They were worried that if America joined the League they would be obliged to interfere in conflicts that most Americans thought were none of their business.
2. The USA had a lot of citizens who were German or Austrian immigrants. These people saw the League as being linked to the hated Treaty of Versailles (see Section Four). Naturally, they were opposed to the USA joining an organisation that was forcing Germany to pay vast amounts in reparations (damages for the War).
3. Some Americans were suspicious of the French and the British. They were sure that the League would come under British and French control and that America would be called upon to help these countries defend their colonies. Many Americans felt that colonies didn't fit in with their ideas about freedom and democracy and should not be supported.
4. Other Americans were concerned that joining the League could cost them money. They were worried that the League would drag America into lots of expensive wars. Many businessmen contended that the US had grown prosperous by staying out of European affairs and that it should remain isolated from Europe.



This is why US Congress refused Wilson's proposal that the USA join the League of Nations.



The USA thought it was better off alone

Perhaps it was a bit selfish of the USA to reject the League, but they probably did save themselves a lot of trouble and expense, at least in the short term. Make sure you learn all the reasons for not joining.

Growth of Isolationism

Cheap European imports were seen as a threat

In the aftermath of WWI, American business interests were afraid that the United States would be flooded with cheap European imports.

Unemployment was higher in Europe so European workers were willing to work for lower wages. Many businessmen were fearful that American consumers would start buying European products rather than the more expensive American ones.

This would mean:

1. The loss of American jobs.
2. Lower profits for US companies.
3. Less money in taxes for the US Government.

Warren G Harding raised tariffs to protect American industry

1. Harding was elected President in 1921. One of his first acts was the Emergency Tariff Act of May 1921. This increased the tariff rates on imported farm products.
2. In 1922, Harding signed the Fordney-McCumber Tariff, which gave the President the power to raise and lower the tariff rates. The Tariff became law on September 19th 1922. It placed duties of up to 400% on foreign imports.
3. President Harding immediately used the Fordney-McCumber Tariff to raise duties on both factory and farm goods.

He hoped to protect American agriculture and business from what they regarded as unfair European competition.

Immigration Control was increased

A large number of foreigners had entered the US in the years immediately after the war. Until 1915, America had followed an 'Open Doors' policy that allowed almost anybody into the USA. By the First World War many Americans were demanding that this 'door' be closed.

The most powerful and wealthy ethnic group in America at this time were the White Anglo-Saxon Protestants (WASPs).

1. The WASPs believed that people such as anarchists and communists were coming into the USA and undermining the American way of life.
2. They were also alarmed at the number of Asian, Catholic and Jewish people who were entering the USA.

The WASPs had great influence in the Congress (the American Parliament). As a consequence President Harding decided to place strict limitations on immigration, especially from Eastern and Southern Europe.

In 1921 the Congress passed an Act which introduced a quota system.

Annual immigration was reduced from over one million to about three hundred thousand.



President Harding

America cut itself off from the rest of the world

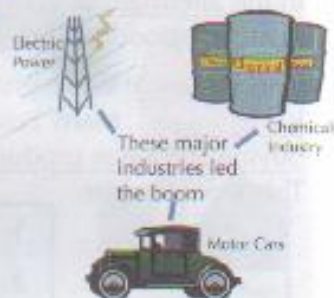
After the First World War, Europe had lots of problems, while America had relatively few.

By limiting foreign imports and reducing immigration, the US sought to secure its peace and prosperity.

Prosperity in the 1920s

This decade was a 'boom-time' for many — incomes rose and standards of living improved.

- 1) There was low inflation, low unemployment and low interest rates.
- 2) Cities were rebuilt with tall skyscrapers, and major road building programmes were undertaken.
- 3) There was a consumer boom. More people could now afford items such as radios, refrigerators, washing machines, vacuum cleaners and telephones.
- 4) Advertising and instalment plans (buying on credit) encouraged even more spending.



The Motor Industry led the way

- 1) The jobs of 1 in 12 workers were linked to motor car production.
- 2) Car production boosted other industries — steel, petrol, chemicals, glass and rubber.
- 3) Cars became more affordable — The Model T Ford cost less than \$300.
- 4) Production of cars became dominated by the big three companies — Ford, Chrysler and General Motors.



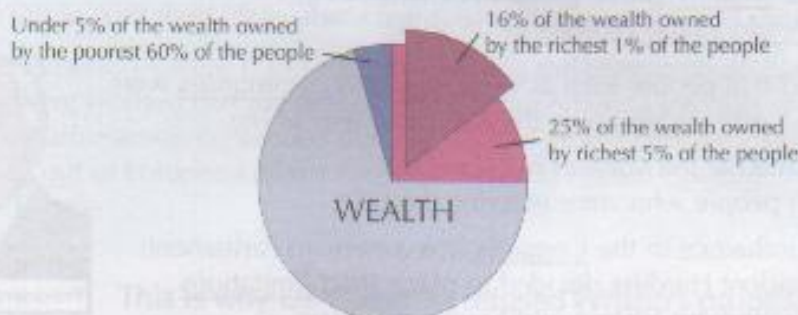
But not everyone shared in the Boom

Some industries did less well, for example:

AGRICULTURE

- 1) The general recession in agriculture continued after 1921. The prices of grain, sugar and cotton were low, and stayed low.
- 2) Overcropping in some places led to soil exhaustion.
- 3) Taxes, mortgages and wages were rising, reducing farmers' profits.

The **COAL** and **TEXTILES** industries also did badly.



The 1920s were not great for everyone. There was a lot of rural poverty, and in the big cities there was low pay, poor housing and poverty — especially for Afro-Americans.

Life was good — for most people anyway

This page is really important. It shows you how the American economy really took off in the 1920s. Make sure you learn some of these statistics — they'll really impress the examiners.

Intolerance in the 1920s

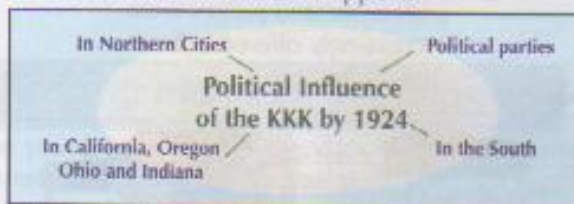
Some groups in America during the 1920s suffered discrimination and persecution.

Immigrants became less welcome

- 1) Between 1880 and 1920 over 40% of immigrants were not Protestant, and came from Central and South-Eastern Europe.
- 2) There was prejudice against newer immigrant groups and worries about Communist agitators entering the country. In 1919 the authorities used a bombing in Washington to whip up a 'Red Scare'. They deported over 4000 people, mainly Russian.
- 3) Circulation of anti-Semitic (anti-Jewish) writings also increased.
- 4) From 1917 immigrants had to pass a 'literacy test' to enter.
- 5) The total number of immigrants was limited to 150,000 a year with the larger portion from Britain, Germany and Scandinavia.

The Ku Klux Klan (KKK) was reformed and Expanded

- 1) Formed in 1886, the KKK was a white supremacist organization based in the Southern States.
- 2) The KKK saw any extension of rights to African-Americans as a threat to social order. They used intimidation, violence and lynching against African-Americans.
- 3) KKK membership had grown to 4 million by 1925, helped by the racist film 'Birth of a Nation' (1915).
- 4) Leader William Simmons employed public relations specialists to broaden the movement's appeal.



The KKK stood for strict, mainstream, white American values and were against all immigrants, Jews and Catholics as well as African-Americans.



KKK members wearing their famous white hoods and robes

The KKK Declined After 1925...

After a scandal involving David Stephenson, the KKK leader in Indiana, much support was lost and the organization never again developed such significant cultural and political power.

...but Intolerance and Racism remained

Laws discriminating against African-Americans, put in place before 1914, continued to operate in many southern states. These laws had been passed primarily to deny African-Americans the vote:

- 1) Only poll tax payers could vote.
- 2) Voters could be required to read or explain part of the constitution.
- 3) A local registrar was given powers to exclude possible voters.
- 4) Voters needed to be able to show that one of their grandfathers voted in the 1865 election. This excluded many African-Americans from voting.

Segregation was enforced in public facilities, for example, schools, transport, parks, cafés and theatres. African-Americans were often denied access to these places altogether, forcing them to use second-rate facilities.

1920s America might have been wealthy but it still had problems

This page deals mostly with the persecution of immigrants and African-Americans, but remember — there were other groups like Jews who were treated badly too. Make sure you learn the main points here.

Prohibition and Organised Crime

In January 1920 laws were passed which made it illegal to manufacture, distribute or sell alcohol. Alcohol was seen by many campaign groups as:

- 1) Socially dangerous.
- 2) Causing drunken behaviour, bad habits and violence.
- 3) Leading to alcoholism and a breakdown of family life.

Also, many breweries were owned by German immigrants who were unpopular after the war.

There were many results of Prohibition

- 1) Saloons were closed down.
- 2) Alcohol prices rose dramatically.
- 3) Alcohol consumption decreased — especially among the poor.
- 4) Over 1500 agents (later increased to 2800+) were recruited to enforce the law.

Organised crime 'took over' the distribution of alcohol

Hi-jackers:
Stole smuggled alcohol



Bootleggers:
Sold on redistilled industrial alcohol

Prohibition Crime

Speakeasies:
Illegal drinking clubs sprang up with secret passwords at the door

Millions of dollars could be made by trading in illegal alcohol. Rival gangs fought for control of the business.

Corruption became a problem as policemen and judges were increasingly offered bribes to turn a blind eye.



Moonshiners:
Made their own liquor

Rumrunners:
Smuggled alcohol from Europe, the West Indies, Canada and Mexico



In Chicago 1926-29, gang warfare led to almost 1300 murders. Al Capone became public enemy No. 1.



An Italian, Al Capone worked for Johnny Torrio, leading Chicago Gangster

Taking over from Torrio in 1925, the ruthless Capone was making \$60m a year from alcohol and \$45m from gambling, dance halls and race tracks.

He used a private army to intimidate voters and fight rival gangs. In 1929, 7 members of a rival gang were machine-gunned in the St Valentine's Day Massacre.

Capone was sentenced to 11 years in prison for tax evasion in 1931. In poor health, he retired to his Florida mansion and died in 1947.

Prohibition finally ended in 1933

Enforcing prohibition proved an impossible task. Federal agents had to:

- resist bribes, corruption and intimidation
- patrol the coasts and borders
- deal with well-armed gangsters
- track down well-organised crime syndicates
- gain the support of a public who continued to buy alcohol

Prohibition didn't work — it just forced drinking underground

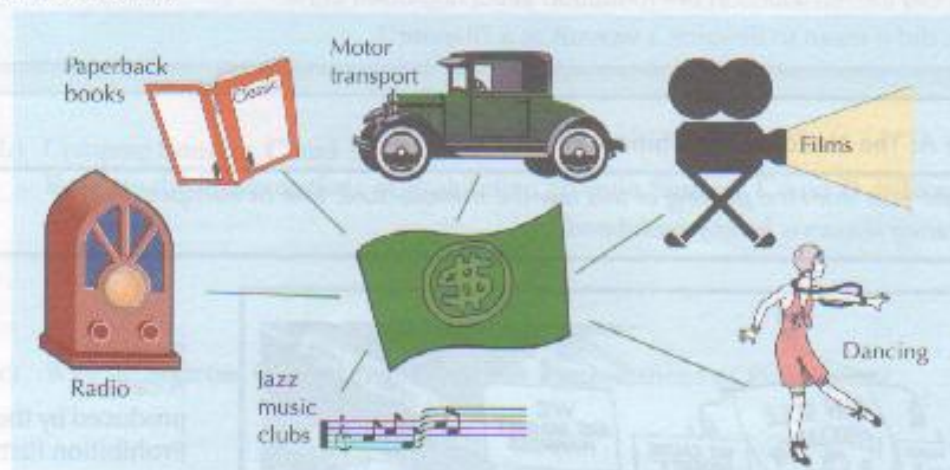
Essentially, Prohibition failed because demand for alcohol continued. Criminals quickly moved in to supply people with illegal liquor, making huge profits and developing sophisticated criminal networks.

Social Developments

People had more money to spend on leisure and entertainment

Film became the essential mass entertainment. Large film theatres in major cities were built which could seat up to 4000. In 1929, films including the first "talkies" made \$720m. Hollywood was established as the major film making centre.

Radio boomed. In 1921 there was just one licensed station. Two years later there were 508. Millions of sets were sold. By 1929, \$850m was spent on sets and parts every year. The N.B.C. (National Broadcasting Corporation) was set up in 1926. By 1929 it had made \$150m from advertising.



Changing manners and morals

The young enjoyed smoking, dancing, cocktail parties and midnight car rides. Some women started to wear lipstick, shorter skirts and high heels (such women were often known as flappers). Many people felt that permissiveness and sexual freedom had gone 'too far'.

Women gained more freedom and independence

- 1) Films, popular songs and paperbacks encouraged new fashions and freedom.
- 2) Some Feminists encouraged liberation, but had only limited success.
- 3) Women were encouraged to gain economic independence — some learned a trade or trained as typists or secretaries. New office jobs provided employment for many women.
- 4) Church attendance fell and divorce increased.
- 5) Household gadgets gave some relief from domestic drudgery.
- 6) Rising high school and college attendance meant women were better educated than before.

But traditional views continued

- 1) Some books and magazines tried to set 'decent' standards.
- 2) Women were still expected to be homemakers.
- 3) In employment there was continuing discrimination against women.
- 4) The vast majority of working class women continued in low skilled, low paid jobs.
- 5) Traditional male values continued to emphasise the superiority of men in the 'public sphere.'

Hollywood, short skirts, and all that jazz

What a great couple of pages to learn here — gangsters, flappers, film stars, they're all here. Don't get carried away though — you still need to know all these facts in detail for the exam.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Make a list of four reasons why the USA did not join the League of Nations.
- 2) a) What are the WASPs?
b) Why did the WASPs want to reduce the number of immigrants entering the USA?
- 3) Briefly describe the main features of the economic "boom" of the 1920s.
- 4) What did the Ku Klux Klan aim to achieve?
- 5) How did the introduction of Prohibition affect organised crime?
- 6) What did it mean to describe a woman as a "flapper"?

Source A: The National Prohibition Act of 1920.

After one year from the passing of this law the manufacture, sale or transportation of intoxicating liquors is hereby prohibited.



Source B:
A cartoon
produced by the
Prohibition Party,
1919.

Source C: Herbert Hoover (US President 1929-1932) speaking about Prohibition in 1919.

Our country has deliberately undertaken a great social and economic experiment, noble in motive and far-reaching in purpose.

Source D: From *My First Impression of the USA*, a book by Albert Einstein.

The prestige of government has undoubtedly been lowered considerably by the prohibition law. For nothing is more destructive of respect for the government and the law of the land than passing laws which cannot be enforced. It is an open secret that the dangerous increase of crime in this country is closely connected with this.

Albert Einstein was a German visitor to the USA in 1921 who later emigrated to the USA in 1932. This book was published in 1921.

Exam Question

1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

(a) Study **Sources A and B** and use your own knowledge.

How does **Source B** help to explain why the Prohibition Act was passed?

(5 marks)

(b) Compare **Sources C and D**.

How are the interpretations of Prohibition given in **Sources C and D** different?

(4 marks)

(c) Why do **Sources C and D** have different interpretations of Prohibition?

(6 marks)

(d) Study **Source D** and use **your own knowledge** to explain why Prohibition failed and was eventually ended in 1933.

(8 marks)

(e) Answer this question using **your own knowledge**.

Describe the changes occurring in American society during the 1920s.

Explain why America in the 1920s experienced such great social change.

(15 marks)

The Wall Street Crash

Wall Street is the major financial centre in New York. Stocks and shares are bought and sold there.

On Black Thursday share prices plummeted

On Thursday 24th October 1929 over 13 million shares were sold.

Confidence in the value of shares began to be lost.

On 28th and 29th October, a series of sharp falls began in the value of shares.

- Some major stocks lost $\frac{1}{4}$ of their value.
- Prices continued to fall for years.
- At the lowest point in 1933, 83% of the stock market's value had been lost.



Efforts to shore up prices failed

Most early losers were large scale speculators. Leading financiers met to pool \$240m.

They used this to buy shares in an attempt to restore confidence and stop panic.

They failed — Panic selling led to further falls.

- Investment trusts were unable to meet their obligations.
- Defaulting on debts led to bankruptcy for others.
- People rushed to withdraw their savings from banks, causing many banks to go bust.

The causes of the Crash

Though the 1920s had been a 'boom time' for many, there were serious structural problems with the economy. Continued prosperity depended more and more on people continuing to spend. But in order to buy consumer goods people had run up large debts, and by the late 1920's many of those able to buy cars and other products had already done so. This meant that after 1927 there was a downturn in demand. This situation was made even worse for a number of reasons:

- 1) Wealth was distributed unequally — rising profits were not passed on to workers, so most people were too poor to spend more. This meant demand did not rise as fast as production.
- 2) There was overproduction — industry was producing more than people wanted to buy. By 1929, unsold stock was building up and manufacturers reduced production. Layoffs began and unemployment rose.
- 3) Banks were largely unregulated. They were unstable and gambled depositors' money on the stock exchange.
- 4) Brokers provided expensive loans to enable investors to buy shares. When the stock market crashed, investors could not pay back their loans.
- 5) Import duties (tariffs) had been placed on various European goods. Other nations found it difficult to sell their products in the US. This meant they had lower income and therefore had to borrow money from the US and became increasingly dependent upon the US economy.
When the US went down — others followed.



Uncontrolled speculation led to rising share values which could not be sustained.

Economics is devilishly tricky, but you still need to learn about it

Speculating on the stock market just means trying to make money by buying and selling shares. In the US, even ordinary people owned shares. Everyone who speculated lost their money in 1929.

The Consequences of the Wall Street Crash

The crash destroyed confidence. People lost money and savings and there was no recovery in sight. A second long decline from mid-1931 to early 1933 resulted in even more bankruptcies.

The Depression hit all walks of life

- 1) Almost 32,000 U.S. businesses folded in 1932 alone.
- 2) Many schools were forced to cut terms, release teachers or close down.
- 3) From late 1929 to mid 1932 5000 banks folded — losing \$3.2 billion of deposits.
- 4) The national income fell from \$80b to \$40b (1929-33)
- 5) The price of goods continued to fall. Industrial production was cut. Wages fell and workers were laid off. A $\frac{1}{4}$ of the workforce (about 13 million) were unemployed by 1933.
- 6) Farm product prices fell 60%. It was costing farmers more to harvest and transport their produce than they could make by selling it — fruit rotted, sheep were killed and burnt, wheat was not harvested and debts increased. Many bankrupt farmers were evicted or became tenants, losing their independence.

The Depression caused terrible poverty

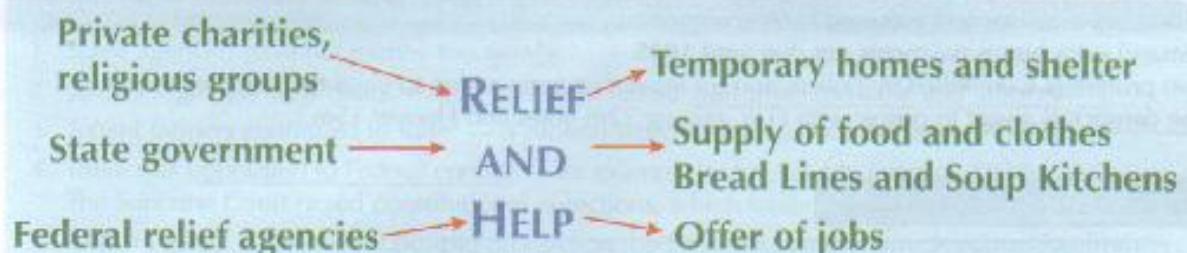
- Poverty led to undernourishment.
- Thousands were made homeless.
- Many people moved to seek work.
- Some fathers abandoned their families in the search for work.
- Migrant farm workers roamed the countryside looking for work.
- Many people became tramps.
- Marriages were delayed and the birth rate fell.

TYPICAL DIET DURING THE DEPRESSION



Attempts were made to help people

The Depression was a shattering and demoralising experience. There were protests — and apathy. But some people fought hard for survival and to keep their pride. State and charitable agencies tried to help people keep going.



John Steinbeck's great novel "The Grapes of Wrath" tells the story of farmers forced to try their luck in California during the Depression. If you haven't got time to read it, try to find a copy of the film to watch — you can feel like you're revising while watching a great movie. (Don't forget to learn this stuff too though.)

People were really, really poor

The main point on this page is simply that the Depression was really bad, and made lots of people destitute and miserable. That's not enough though — you need to learn the details too.

Election of Roosevelt (FDR)

President Hoover Failed to ease the Depression

President Hoover did act but didn't do enough to deal with the continuing Depression. When the recovery that Hoover continued to promise did not arrive, people lost faith in big business and the Republican government.

Hoover's Action on the Economy didn't go far enough

Hoover did undertake some measures to help the economy:

1. Some reduction in taxation so that people had more money to spend.
2. An expansion of 'Public works'.
3. A Home Loans Act to help with mortgage payments.
4. Conferences with industrialists in an effort to maintain jobs and wages.
5. A one year suspension on war debts and reparations by European governments to the USA, in the hope that this would enable them to buy more American goods.
6. The Reconstruction Finance Corporation provided some loans to help firms.

For many people this was "too little, too late".

Hoover persisted in his belief in 'rugged individualism' — he believed that if the right conditions could be created, people would be able to work themselves out of poverty without direct assistance from the Government. He therefore refused to offer any financial relief to individuals. This was very unpopular.

Some of Hoover's policies may even have harmed the world economy and hampered US recovery. For example, high tariffs on foreign goods led to retaliation — other countries raised their tariffs to protect their own industries. US exports halved (1930-1932).

FDR was Elected in 1932

FDR (Franklin Delano Roosevelt) had been a vigorous and popular governor of New York. He ran a well organised and energetic campaign supported by wealthy backers. Influential supporters helped him with ideas and well written speeches.

So FDR looked like a winner. Hoover was not helped by the 'Bonus Army' protests in the spring of 1932.

1500 army veterans had gathered in Washington to demand extra bonus payments not due until 1945.

Two protesters were killed by police, and 63 injured in army action to clear their encampments.

The democrats swept to power with FDR gaining 22m votes and Hoover 15m.



FDR had 3 Main Aims

Relief – to help to improve the lives of people.

Recovery – to begin to rebuild U.S. industry and trade.

Reform – to change conditions to ensure future progress.

This was to be a 'New Deal' for the American people.

Hoover was not seen to be helping people enough

Remember the last page — the Great Depression was a terrible time. Hoover tried to help big business and the economy as a whole, but he did little to help ordinary people. That is why he lost to FDR in 1932.

The New Deal

Roosevelt now had to deliver his 'New Deal' to the American people. Confidence and stability had to be restored in banking and finance.

- There was a four day 'bank holiday' closure.
- Healthy, sound banks re-opened.
- Weak banks were re-organised under Federal supervision.
- Laws were introduced to insure deposits and limit speculation.
- The stock market was to be monitored more closely.
- The USA was taken off the 'Gold Standard'.



Bank failures fell — deposits rose — and confidence began to return.

The 'Hundred Days' Launched Many New Measures

The "Hundred Days" was the first period of Roosevelt's term in office during which he introduced many new acts. Much work was to be carried out by special Federal agencies (often called 'Alphabetical Agencies' because they were known by their initials). Some of the most important were:

- FERA** The Federal Emergency Relief Administration made \$500m available to state and local government for emergency relief. This was used to give direct assistance to the poor, for example, dole payments and soup kitchens.
- CCC** The Civilian Conservation Corps provided work for thousands of unemployed men in forestry, water and soil conservation projects. This was followed by the Public Works Administration (PWA) which provided work building roads, bridges, hospitals, schools and housing.
- AAA** The Agricultural Adjustment Act paid farmers to limit food production. This raised prices, and increased farmers' incomes. The AAA also helped farmers modernise and rebuild their businesses.
- NRA** The National Recovery Administration drew up codes of fair competition, set minimum wages and a maximum eight-hour day. Trade unions were encouraged. This was a co-operative effort and relied on the voluntary agreement of business.
- TVA** The Tennessee Valley Authority. See page 166 for details.

The Economy Gained a Little Strength But Problems Remained

- 1 Some agencies gave out money too slowly.
- 2 Stricter regulations on hours, wages, and child labour hurt small business and farmers.
- 3 Tenant farmers continued to suffer — 3 million were displaced from the land (1932-5).
- 4 There was opposition to Federal control — for example by the 'Liberty League' (1934-6). The Supreme Court raised constitutional objections, which badly delayed several of FDR's measures.
- 5 After an initial increase in industrial production the NRA encountered much opposition from business and was unable to secure continued recovery. Some argue that FDR didn't put enough money into reviving industry.
- 6 The severe drought and heat, on top of overfarming, led to the erosion of topsoil in large areas of the Midwest. Parts of Kansas and Oklahoma became 'dustbowls'.

But the fall in wages and prices was halted. Employment rose, and despite criticisms that Roosevelt was not being radical enough, the measures were very popular.

Roosevelt got the job done — well, some of it anyway

Lots to learn here — make sure you know it all in enough detail. Look over the page again, cover it up and then scribble down as much as you can remember. Then look back to see what you missed.

The TVA and the Second New Deal

The Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA)

The Tennessee Valley was one of the poorest regions in the country.

- 1) Over-cultivation had led to soil erosion and this had turned the land into a near desert.
- 2) Agriculture was in a dreadful condition and industry almost non-existent. Many local people were leaving the area to find work further west.

What the TVA did

- 1) The TVA built a large number of dams that prevented the flooding that had been causing so much damage to the land and to provide irrigation in times of drought.
- 2) Millions of trees were planted in order to prevent further soil erosion.
- 3) The TVA constructed power stations which brought electricity to the area.



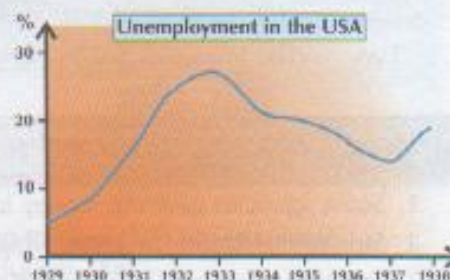
The result was a huge improvement in the region's economy. The massive building projects provided thousands of jobs for local people. Agriculture began to prosper and new industries moved to the area for the first time.

The Second New Deal

The second New Deal which began in 1935 took the new ideas about social welfare and the responsibilities of the state even further. Roosevelt introduced new measures that would benefit the elderly, the sick and the unemployed.

The Social Security Act was passed in 1935

- 1) This began America's state system of old age pensions. Americans over the age of 65 received a government pension.
- 2) It also set up a plan for unemployment benefit. Both employers and employees paid into a fund so that the worker received a small amount of unemployment benefit if he lost his job.
- 3) It also set up schemes to help the sick and the disabled.



The Wagner Act, 1935

This Act gave every worker the right to join a trade union. All companies were now forced by law to allow their employees to become members of a trade union.

The Works Progress Administration, 1935

- This was very like the Public Works Administration, but it also created jobs for actors, artists, photographers and musicians.

However, the USA still lagged behind countries like Britain and Germany in social welfare provision.

Social Welfare was new to America

One important change brought about by the New Deal was the acceptance that the state had a role to play in relieving the hardship of individual citizens. This was what the second New Deal was all about.

Opposition to the New Deal

Although many Americans supported the New Deal, some people opposed Roosevelt's policies.

Some thought the New Deal had Not Gone Far Enough

There were a number of people who said that the New Deal had not gone far enough to help poor people.

- 1) An American politician, Senator Huey Long of Louisiana, had a plan that he called 'Share Our Wealth'. Long wanted to tax the rich and give the money to the poor. He claimed that it would give every family an income of \$5000 p.a. The families would spend the money and this would create a bigger demand for goods and services and therefore more jobs.



Senator Huey Long

- 2) Another of Roosevelt's critics was Dr Francis Townsend. Dr Townsend recommended a plan by which every American over 60 was given a pension of \$200 per month (a huge amount in the 1930s) on condition that they spent the lot within one month. Dr Townsend said that this would give a big boost to the economy and get unemployment down.

Some thought the New Deal had Gone Too Far

Some businessmen and the Republican party took the view that the New Deal had gone too far.

- 1) Roosevelt's critics said that the New Deal made Americans too dependent on government help. These people believed that it was wrong for the government to create work and give Americans pensions and sickness benefits. Individuals should provide these things for themselves through their own efforts.
- 2) Some business people were angry that the New Deal allowed trade unions into the workplace. They said this was unnecessary government interference in the way that they ran their business affairs.
- 3) Some people condemned the New Deal measures as 'socialist' and therefore un-American.
- 4) It was claimed that it was wrong to tax the rich to pay for the New Deal. The rich had earned their wealth through their own efforts and enterprise. By taxing the rich you discouraged them from wishing to create more wealth.

There was also Opposition from the Supreme Court

- 1) In 1935, the Supreme Court declared that several of the New Deal measures were unconstitutional and therefore illegal. Most of the judges were Republicans and therefore opposed to Roosevelt and his policies.
- 2) Roosevelt asked the Congress to allow him to put six Democrats on the Supreme Court so that this would not happen again. However, many Americans felt that this would be a violation of the constitution and Roosevelt was forced to back down.
- 3) In any case, the Supreme Court began to take a more lenient view of the New Deal and the argument died down. However the objections did succeed in delaying some of FDR's policies.

Not everyone agreed with the New Deal

Remember, America was (and to a great extent still is) deeply attached to ideas of free enterprise and minimal state intervention in the private affairs of individuals. This largely explains the opposition to FDR.

How Successful was the New Deal?

In order to assess how successful the New Deal was, you must first remind yourself of what it was trying to accomplish — its three main aims...

The New Deal had considerable success in achieving its main aims

1) Give Aid to the Needy

The FERA certainly did a good job in providing the needy with much needed emergency aid.

From 1935 onwards, the elements of a basic welfare state were established — unemployment benefit, and pensions were introduced, and the government intervened to ensure better working conditions and a minimum wage.



A Depression era breadline

2) To Restore Stability to America's Banking and Financial System

Roosevelt was successful in resolving the banking crisis with the Emergency Banking Act (EBA). This restored people's confidence in the banks and people began to deposit their money in them once again.

3) To Reduce Unemployment and Restore Prosperity



The New Deal created millions of jobs through the various agencies such as the CCC and the PWA. When Roosevelt became president in 1933, unemployment stood at 13 million. In 1940, the figure was 8 million.

However, though the 1940 figure is an improvement on the one for 1933, it is important to remember that there were only 1.5 million people out of work in 1929. So the New Deal did not actually restore low unemployment in America.

In 1937, another depression hit the American economy and unemployment rose in 1938 to over 10 million. The New Deal therefore failed to solve America's unemployment problem.

The Second World War finally Solved the Unemployment Problem

It was the outbreak of the Second World War in Europe that brought the jobless total down.

- 1) When the war broke out, the Americans sold millions of dollars worth of industrial products to the British who needed them to fight the Germans. This created jobs for millions of Americans.
- 2) America's entry into the war in 1941 put an end to high unemployment once and for all. The demand for military equipment and recruitment for the armed forces meant that the unemployment problem was quickly resolved.

The New Deal was good for the economy, but World War Two was better

So that's America covered. Roosevelt and the New Deal achieved quite a lot, but he could not solve the Depression, only relieve the worst of the hardship. It took major changes in economic conditions, brought about by the Second World War, to finally sort out America's unemployment problem.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) Explain how uncontrolled speculation caused the Wall Street Crash.
- 2) List three underlying problems which the American economy had in the 1920s, and explain how they helped to cause the great depression of the 1930s.
- 3) Why was President Hoover accused of doing "too little, too late"?
- 4) Make a list of the "Alphabetical Agencies" and the work they did to tackle the problems of the depression.
- 5) Explain why Roosevelt's policies are called the "New Deal".
- 6) Why did some people believe that the New Deal had not gone far enough, and other believed that it had gone too far?

Source A: A Short History of the TVA, from the official TVA website, 2003

Even by Depression standards, the Tennessee Valley was in sad shape in 1933. TVA developed fertilizers, taught farmers how to improve crop yields, and helped replant forests, control forest fires, and improve habitat for wildlife and fish. The most dramatic change in Valley life came from the electricity generated by TVA dams. Electric lights and modern appliances made life easier and farms more productive. Electricity also drew industries into the region, providing desperately needed jobs.



Source B: Still a hero, an American cartoon which appeared in 1933.

Hoover was the American President who lost the 1932 election to Roosevelt. Mellon was Secretary of the Treasury during the time Hoover was President.

The two men are saying:
 "President a week and he's still on his pedestal."
 "Oh Boy, a modern American record."

Source C: From Outlining the New Deal, a radio broadcast to the American people by President Franklin D Roosevelt, Sunday May 7 1933.

But today we have reason to believe that things are a little better than they were two months ago. Industry has picked up, railroads are carrying more freight, farm prices are better, but I am not going to indulge in issuing proclamations of over-enthusiastic assurance. We cannot ballyhoo ourselves back to prosperity.

From one of Roosevelt's radio broadcasts which came to be known as the "Fireside Chats"

Source D: From It's a Great Life by Robert L Miller, a worker with the Civilian Conservation Corps (CCC), 1937.

By enrolling in President Roosevelt's peace time army I managed to retain my self respect. I did not have to become either a parasite, living off my relatives, or a professional bum. In other words, it gave me a chance to stand on my own two feet and make my own way in the world.

Exam Question

1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer all parts of Question 1.

(a) Use **Source A** only.

In what ways was the Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA) a success?

(6 marks)

(b) What can we learn from **Source B** about America's belief in Roosevelt's ability to solve the problems of the depression?

(8 marks)

(c) Study **Source A** and use **your own knowledge**.

What measures did Roosevelt take to try to solve the unemployment problem?

(7 marks)

(d) Study **Sources C and D**.

Do these sources contain sufficient information to prove that Roosevelt was successful in rebuilding the confidence of the American people?

(8 marks)

(e) Answer this question using **your own knowledge**.

Was the New Deal a success?

(15 marks)

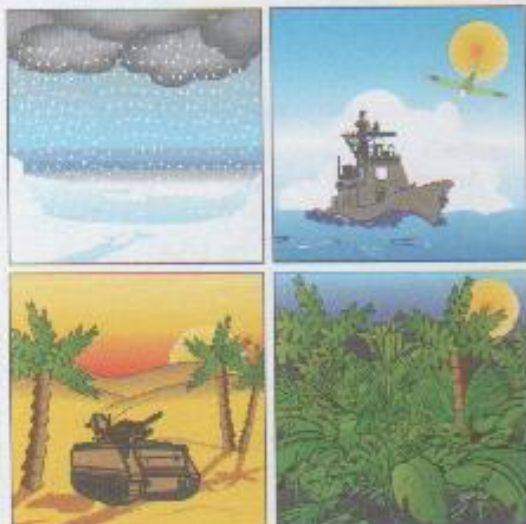
Revision Summary

You've read the section, now try these revision questions, just to check that you've got the whole thing stored safely in your brain. Don't forget — if you get any wrong, look back through the section, learn it properly and then try it again. Ready? Then we'll begin.

- 1) Name the policy followed by the USA in their dealings with other countries after the First World War.
- 2) Write a short paragraph explaining why many people in America didn't want to join the League of Nations.
- 3) Why could goods be produced more cheaply in European countries than in the USA after the First World War?
- 4) Who became President in 1921?
- 5) What did the Fordney-McCumber Tariff allow the US President to do?
- 6) Name three immigrant groups that were treated with hostility in the 1920s.
- 7) Explain how the motor industry contributed to American prosperity in the 1920s.
- 8) Why did agriculture not share in the boom?
- 9) What did the Klu Klux Klan believe in? Who did they persecute?
- 10) List three ways in which African-Americans were discriminated against in 1920s America.
- 11) When was Prohibition introduced?
- 12) Explain the following terms: *speakeasy*, *bootlegging*, *moonshiner*.
- 13) Name three forms of entertainment which first became popular in the 1920s.
- 14) Explain how the social position of women changed in the 1920s.
- 15) Explain what the economic term 'speculation' means.
- 16) How did overproduction contribute to the Wall Street Crash?
- 17) Which rose faster in the 1920s: the value of stocks, or the price of shares?
- 18) How many Americans were unemployed by 1933?
- 19) Explain why Hoover lost the 1932 election.
- 20) Who won the 1932 election? What were his three main aims?
- 21) Name two 'Alphabetical Agencies' and explain how they helped America through the Depression.
- 22) Write down three successes and three limitations of the New Deal.
- 23) What does TVA stand for?
- 24) Name two Acts passed in 1935 as part of the 'Second New Deal'.
- 25) Why did Huey Long oppose the New Deal?
- 26) Which two main groups thought the New Deal had gone too far? Why did they think this?
- 27) What finally solved America's unemployment problem?

The Second World War 1939-1945

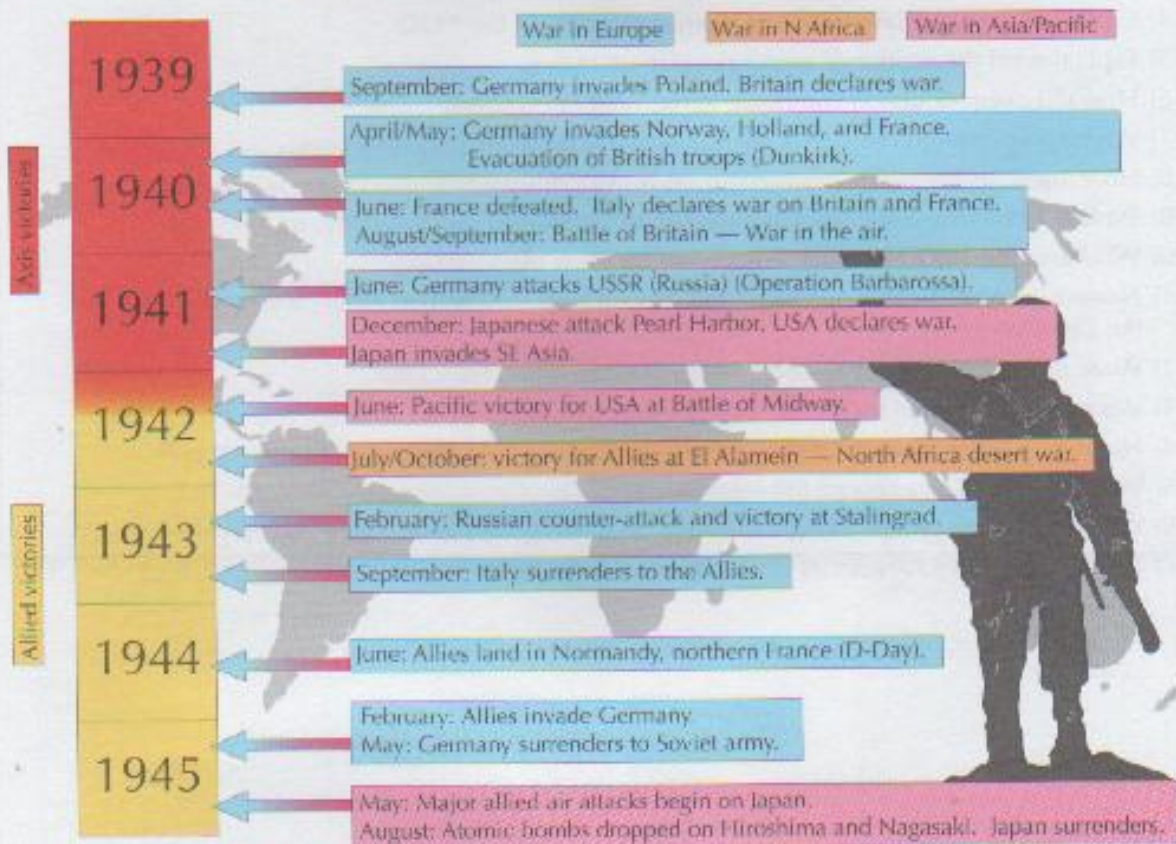
Warfare had moved on since the First World War



- 1) The fighting really was worldwide — from the desert to the Arctic, from mountains to jungle, on land, sea and in the air. Fighting raged through Europe, Africa, Asia, and the Pacific.
- 2) Technology had advanced in 20 years — aircraft and tanks had been of limited use in the First War. This would be a war of rapid movement — without trench war stalemate.
- 3) Civilian populations were even more affected — by advances in bombing technology, evacuation, occupation, and shortages etc. Many people still remembered the First War — no-one celebrated this time. The economy and society of each country at war was soon completely geared to helping the war effort.

The Chronology of the Second World War

You'll need to know the order of the major events of the War before we look at them in detail:



The Second World War — a war of speed and movement

Important stuff on this page — you really need to learn the chronology of the war so you know what happened when. Scribble a list of the main differences between the First and Second World War.

The Outbreak of War

Germany attacked Poland on 1st September 1939



Hitler had made a pact with the USSR so that the Soviets wouldn't help Poland (P. 85, P. 117 and P. 149). Hitler didn't believe anyone would try to stop him so he ordered German forces to begin a Blitzkrieg attack. (Blitzkrieg means a rapid attack — from the German meaning lightning attack.)

Poland was Defeated within One Month

- 1) Britain and France declared war on Germany, but there was no time to help Poland.
- 2) Poland was conquered quickly by the Germans. Over 100,000 Polish soldiers escaped through Romania to the West, to carry on the fight. Many came to Britain.
- 3) The Soviet Red Army crossed the border to occupy Eastern Poland.

The next 6 months are called the Phoney War because nothing happened. France and Britain were waiting for Hitler's next move — and he was waiting to see if they would make peace. Soon Hitler realised they wouldn't, so the Germans planned an offensive in the West.

Blitzkrieg gave Poland no time to prepare

Poland was in German hands before Britain and France had time to lift a finger. Make sure you know why the Russians didn't help Poland, and why Blitzkrieg was so effective.

The Outbreak of War

Germany's 1940 Spring Offensive nearly defeated the allies

- 1) In April Germany invaded Denmark and Norway.
- 2) On May 10th German forces swept through Holland, Belgium and Luxembourg towards France.
- 3) This Blitzkrieg forced French and British forces to retreat until they were trapped at Dunkirk.

Operation Dynamo saved the army trapped at Dunkirk

Between May 28th and June 6th 200,000 British and 140,000 French soldiers were rescued from the beaches. A fleet of ships including civilian pleasure boats crossed the English Channel for the rescue.

But over 68,000 soldiers were killed in the retreat, and most of the Army's equipment was abandoned on the beach.



The Offensive of 1940 changed the war completely

- 1) France surrendered — German-controlled Europe was ready to invade Britain.
- 2) Neville Chamberlain had already resigned as British Prime Minister. Failed military action in Norway meant MPs had decided he was too weak to lead the country.
- 3) Winston Churchill became leader. He insisted Britain would "never surrender".

The Phoney War — suddenly it became very real

There you are then, the main events of the first year of war — Blitzkrieg, the Phoney War, and the Spring Offensive. Scribble down the main details of the German Offensive and the Dunkirk Evacuation.

Britain Stood Alone in 1940

Hitler's invasion plan led to the **Battle of Britain**

The German Plan to invade Britain was called **Operation Sealion**. The most important part of the plan was that the German **Luftwaffe** must first destroy the **Royal Air Force**. During August and September 1940 the **RAF** won the Battle of Britain in the air. There were several reasons why:

		
Fighters lost	470	769
Fighters built	391	943

Production of more aircraft.
Factories working at full capacity made more aircraft.

Aircraft
The British Spitfire and Hurricanes proved more manoeuvrable than the German Messerschmitts which were further from their bases with shorter flying time.

RAF Pilots
Despite a desperate shortage of pilots, the skillful and highly trained pilots of the RAF fought with bravery and efficiency.

Winston Churchill
"Never in the field of human conflict was so much owed by so many to so few"

Radar
Developed secretly in Britain before the war began.





See page 190 for more about the Battle of Britain

The fear of invasion led to the forming of the **Home Guard** — a volunteer defence army for men who were too old or unfit for active military service. They didn't even have proper weapons to start with. One group had 4 rifles for 100 men and one issued each man with a 2m long spear!

Defeat in the air changed Germany's war plan

- 1) The Luftwaffe **failed** to destroy the RAF in the Battle of Britain. This meant German soldiers couldn't land safely in Britain. Operation Sealion was **abandoned**.
- 2) Instead the Germans began the **Blitz** — heavy bombing of British cities. They hoped to **break** British **morale** and force the government to make peace.
- 3) Hitler planned to **attack** the USSR. He wanted to win a **quick victory** over Britain.
- 4) US President Roosevelt was sending more **help** to Britain. He was **opposed** to the **Fascism** of the Axis countries. Credit called Lend-Lease allowed Britain to buy arms and supplies.

Fighting spread to the **Balkans and North Africa**

- 1) Hitler needed **oil** supplies from ROMANIA so he **forced** them to **support** Germany in the War. He also forced HUNGARY and BULGARIA to support him as well.
- 2) Meanwhile ITALY had **invaded** GREECE but was **defeated** by much weaker forces.
- 3) Germany **invaded** YUGOSLAVIA and GREECE to **stop** Britain sending help and opening a **Second Front** against the Axis armies there.
- 4) German and Italian forces were also fighting in NORTH AFRICA in an attempt to take the **Suez Canal** and **cut off** British oil supplies to force them to surrender.

The Battle of Britain — turning the war against the Axis

Remember that after the **Battle of Britain**, the Germans had to **change** their war plan. Scribble a list of reasons **why** the RAF won, and what changes in German strategy resulted.

1940-1943 North Africa — Desert Warfare

In September 1940 Hitler's ally, Italy, began to invade Egypt — to gain more land for an Italian Empire, and to try and cut off British oil supplies from the Suez Canal.

Events in North Africa began and ended with Success

- 1) Italian troops advanced into Egypt where the British army, led by General Wavell, pushed them back into Libya.

- 2) In February 1941 German reinforcements led by Rommel — the Afrika Korps — were sent by Hitler. By June Rommel's forces were on the attack and 200 miles inside Egypt. Victory would have given them control of the Suez Canal.

- 3) The Battle of El Alamein was the turning point in the land war. Check back with the chronology on P.172.



Three reasons for Allied victory at El Alamein

- 1) German supply lines were stretched — they had already advanced a long distance.
- 2) The British troops had been reinforced with extra tanks, guns and aircraft.
- 3) A talented new British commander — Montgomery (Monty) — coordinated the attack.

The war in the desert

Conditions in the desert were terrible for the troops on both sides to fight and to survive in.



Scaring heat by day



Lack of water



Freezing at night



Flies and disease



Open landscape - suitable for tank warfare

The results of El Alamein

- 1) El Alamein was the first serious setback that Hitler had suffered. After the war Churchill said "...before El Alamein we never had a victory. After it we never had a defeat."
- 2) Allied landings were soon made in Algeria under U.S. General Eisenhower, and Sicily was invaded in July 1943, followed by the Italian mainland in September.
- 3) By 1942 German forces were mainly engaged in fighting in the USSR.

The British army were the 'desert rats'

Make sure you know the reasons for the Axis invasion of North Africa, and the reasons for their defeat. El Alamein changed the war so you've really got to know how it was won and what the key results were.

The Russian Front

Stalin had made a pact with Hitler in 1939 to avoid war (see P. 117 and P. 149).

Hitler planned to **attack the USSR**

- 1) He planned to take land in the East for Lebensraum — living space for the 'natural development' of the German people.
- 2) He wanted to destroy the Communist system which he saw as a threat, and steal the resources such as oil and grain from rich republics like the Ukraine as well as from Russia itself.
- 3) He also wanted to use the Slav peoples as slave labour — he believed they were inferior.



Operation Barbarossa began in June 1941

Hitler had planned 3 attacks on the major cities of the USSR but Stalin didn't believe that the Nazis would break the pact — so the USSR wasn't ready for war (see also P. 150).

Hitler's Gamble	What went wrong?
1. Russians unprepared and weak	1. Distance and supply — over 1500 km to Moscow
2. Russian equipment outdated	2. Bad conditions of roads slowed down advance
3. Many people, especially in the Ukraine, hate Communism and may support Hitler	3. Russian retreat — scorched earth policy — leaves nothing behind that the Germans could use
4. Crush resistance before winter sets in.	4. Nazi brutality turned the Russian people against the Germans

The Winter Campaign froze to a halt

- 1) Barbarossa had been delayed because of the help that German forces gave to the Italians in the Balkans in the spring of 1941 (see P. 175) — soon winter would reach Hitler's army.
- 2) November brought snow and sub-zero temperatures. The German soldiers were unprepared for a winter campaign and weren't equipped properly.
- 3) The Germans didn't reach their targets:

Leningrad — held out under siege in terrible conditions for over 2½ years.

Moscow — German forces advanced to the suburbs but failed to take the capital.

Stalingrad — in winter 1942 thousands of Germans were surrounded by the Soviet army.

The Soviets held the Germans then pushed them back



The Red army kept fighting because factories and machine production had been moved east, out of range of the German invasion. They held the attack and gradually forced the Germans back — at great cost. Twenty million Soviets died — including civilians. But 75% of the German forces were occupied fighting them, allowing time for Britain and the USA to build up forces and to prepare an attack in the west.

Hitler lost the gamble — now it was payback time

They just keep on coming... Even more facts for you here — just learn the key points, the reasons why Hitler decided to attack the USSR — and why the attack went so badly wrong.

The Rise of Japan 1930-1942

The War in the Far East didn't begin at the same time as the War in Europe.

The war in Asia was caused by Japanese growth

- 1) Japan was a major and growing industrial power.
- 2) Japan had taken control of Korea in 1905 and Manchuria in 1931 (see p. 77).
- 3) Many Japanese people admired the strength and power of dictators like Hitler and Mussolini in Europe.
- 4) The Army took more power, building up large and modern naval and land forces.
- 5) A treaty was signed with Hitler in 1936.
- 6) By 1941 Japan had taken control of large parts of Eastern China.

To maintain their power and economic advantages the Japanese needed supplies of coal, rubber, tin, oil and other raw materials.



Japan planned a surprise attack on the USA

The USA, worried by Japanese expansion, had banned trade with Japan. This stopped 80% of oil supplies to Japan in summer 1941. A Japanese surprise attack against the USA would allow the conquest of S.E. Asia and the Pacific before the USA had recovered. This was the reason for the attack on Pearl Harbor, the big US Naval Base in Hawaii on 7th December 1941.



Results of Pearl Harbor

- 1) Over 2,400 people were killed in the surprise bombing raid and many more were injured.
- 2) 8 battleships were sunk or badly damaged, but the aircraft carriers were at sea and the attack missed the main fuel supplies of the base.
- 3) Public opinion in the USA was outraged and Congress voted to declare war on Japan.
- 4) Germany declared war on the USA in support of Japan — often seen as a big mistake.

Different interpretations of Pearl Harbor

Some historians say that U.S. President Roosevelt had been warned of an attack but that these warnings had not been passed on. Some believe that Churchill may have deliberately kept back information about the attack, realising that a 'surprise' attack was a surefire way of bringing the USA into the war.

A real world war — again

The key for you here is separating fact from opinion — Churchill keeping back information and Germany's big mistake are opinions where there's no clear evidence. Pearl Harbor was a fact.

Pacific War 1942-1945

The Japanese conquered Asia quickly

- 1) Within months Japan had captured the Pacific Islands, the Philippines, Malaya, Singapore and various parts of Burma.
- 2) The main factors in their success were surprise attacks, good equipment, well-trained pilots and a very large army and navy.



The Battle of Midway turned the war against Japan

This was the key Pacific Ocean battle — the US fleet managed to sink all four Japanese aircraft carriers (June 1942). These ships were a vital part of the Japanese navy. This broke the Japanese hold on the Pacific, and was one of the major turning points of the whole war.

Allied forces retook Asia and moved for Japan

- 1) Japanese forces defended bravely as the Allies used a tactic of island-hopping in the Pacific.
- 2) On Iwo Jima in early 1943, 23,000 Japanese fought to the 'last man' and 20,000 Americans died in order to capture eight square miles.
- 3) Kamikaze pilots trained to die 'with honour', flew suicide missions in explosive-filled planes in order to destroy as many Allied targets as they could.

Island Hopping

U.S. forces take important bases and cut Japanese supply lines



The new US President, Truman, had a choice between invading Japan and suffering huge losses of soldiers, or using a new secret weapon — the atomic bomb — to try to end the war.

Two atomic bombs were dropped in August 1945



- 1) The first bomb on Hiroshima killed over 70,000 people.
- 2) 3 days later at Nagasaki, 36,000 were killed.
- 3) The Manhattan Project to make the bombs had cost \$2000 million — a massive investment by the USA.

The results of the atomic bombs

- 1) On 14th August Japanese forces surrendered — the Second World War was finally over.
- 2) The rest of the world, especially the USSR, were immediately worried by the threat of this weapon.
- 3) Radiation sickness continued to kill people right through the twentieth century.

The atomic bomb — still a difficult problem

Some historians say a demonstration explosion on an island would have made the Japanese surrender. Others say that one million soldiers' lives were saved because Japan surrendered after the bombs.

Occupation and Resistance

Occupied countries were controlled by enemy forces

The only occupied part of Britain was the Channel Islands — from July 1940 until May 1945. For the people this meant:

- 1) German control of their education and schooling.
- 2) Censorship of all newspapers and information.
- 3) Hotels and businesses taken over for the use of German troops.
- 4) Some people sent to internment camps in Germany.
- 5) Shortages of many goods and foodstuffs.



Over 750 million people lived in countries occupied by German or Japanese forces. The occupying army controlled laws, government, and the taking of food, supplies and machinery.

The Results of Occupation were often harsh

Food scarce



Food supplies were controlled by the occupying forces. Priority was given to the military — civilians had to scrape by on what they could get. Many Russian civilians starved to death in Nazi occupied areas.



Control

Occupying forces regulated all aspects of daily life including education and access to medical care.



Fear

S.S. &
Gestapo
(Secret police)

The SS and Gestapo kept a close eye on occupied areas, with the help of local informants. This made resistance difficult.

Populations were forced to cooperate with the occupying forces through fear of reprisal punishments. Some people collaborated (helped) because they wanted to gain better treatment or more food. Some were willing collaborators.

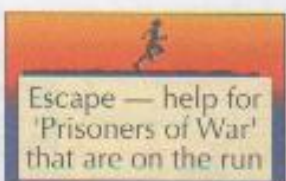
Civilians in occupied Europe were put in a difficult position

Civilians did not know how long the war would last, or indeed if the Allies would win or not. It's easy to see why some threw their lot in with the Germans — the occupation could have been permanent.

Occupation and Resistance

*In many areas there were **active Resistance Movements***

- 1) For example in FRANCE some people resisted with:



- 2) In YUGOSLAVIA the partisans fought a very effective resistance campaign.

*Both sides used **prison camps***

- 1) In Eastern Europe some of the worst slave labour camps for prisoners were established. Over 4 million Soviet soldiers were tortured, frozen and starved to death.
- 2) In Asia, many Chinese and Korean people were forcibly removed from their homes — they were also used for slave labour by the Japanese.
- 3) In Allied countries there were internment camps for foreign nationals — for example Japanese people in the USA, and Germans in the USSR.
- 4) There were many POW camps — for prisoners of war. In Germany the best known was Colditz. There were half a million prisoners of war (POWs) in Britain — two camps were at Sheffield and Bridgend. At the end of the war 25,000 Germans chose to stay in Britain, and 800 married local women.



Occupation — it tended to lead to resistance

Make sure you understand the reasons why people became collaborators. But don't forget — ordinary people started to fight back against the invading forces in resistance movements.

The Holocaust

The Nazi hatred of the Jews grew during the war

- 1) Historically, the Jews have often been treated badly and suffered anti-semitism throughout Europe.
- 2) The Nazis believed the Aryans (a white race) were the Master Race and other races like Jews were inferior and subhuman. Jewish people were a minority in lots of countries like Germany. Hitler used them as scapegoats for the country's problems. The Nazi campaign against Jews began when the Nazis won power.

1933 Murder of 36 Jews  over 35,000 fled	1935 Nuremberg Laws Jews could not vote or marry Germans 	Concentration Camps established 	1938 November 'Night of broken glass'  Jewish shops, homes and synagogues attacked	1939 Increased control: Curfew No wireless sets 	1941 Made to wear yellow star. Kept off public transport. Rations reduced 
---	--	--	---	--	--

- 3) After the invasions of Poland and Russia more Jews came under Nazi control.
- 4) Adolf Eichmann was put in charge of 'resettlement'.
- 5) In 1940 the idea of a Jewish reservation was dropped — they were moved into ghettos. The largest was in Warsaw. Starvation and disease killed half a million people.
- 6) When Russia was invaded, Special Action Corps followed with orders to kill every Jew they came across in the occupied towns and villages.

The Nazis invented a 'Final Solution' in 1942

- 1) Death Camps were built in Eastern Europe. Gas chambers were built for mass murder.
- 2) Mainly Jewish people were killed, but there were others as well — Slavs (Russians and Poles), gypsies, black people, homosexuals, disabled people, Communists and other political enemies.
- 3) Heinrich Himmler, head of the SS, was in overall charge of this 'final solution'.
- 4) Some extermination camps were:
AUSCHWITZ, TREBLINKA, SOBIBOR, CHELMNO, BELZEC.

Persecution gradually increased

The Nazis did not start murdering Jews on a large scale as soon as they got to power. Persecution and violence towards Jewish people built up gradually over time. It was not until 1942 that it became Nazi policy to systematically exterminate all Jews, rather than use them as slave labour.

The Holocaust

*Different arguments about **how** this mass murder happened*

After the war people around the world found it hard to believe that this inhuman, cold-blooded extermination had taken place, and that so many soldiers were involved. People tried to explain it in several different ways:

- 1) The Nazi guards were simply doing a job and obeying orders. They feared their leaders.
- 2) The Jews were not regarded as human by the Nazis — so they believed that killing them didn't matter.
- 3) The soldiers involved hid the truth of what they were doing. The world only discovered the horror of the Death Camps as the Allies advanced in 1945.

The reaction of the Jewish people to the Persecution

- 1) Those who resisted the Nazis faced death. Some fled into the forests, and formed resistance groups to blow up railway lines and attack German soldiers.
- 2) In some ghettos Jewish authorities thought the best way to save lives was to cooperate with the Nazis and to produce goods for them.
- 3) A rebellion in the Warsaw ghetto in 1943 was ruthlessly put down.
- 4) There was some resistance in the camps, and escapes from Sobibor and Auschwitz.
- 5) Reports of what was happening in the camps were smuggled out. Before the war ended, Nazi orders went out to destroy the camps and the evidence — but there wasn't time.

Some historians claim there's evidence that leaders like Churchill knew about the camps — and didn't believe the facts. By April 1945 over 5½ million Jewish people had been murdered.

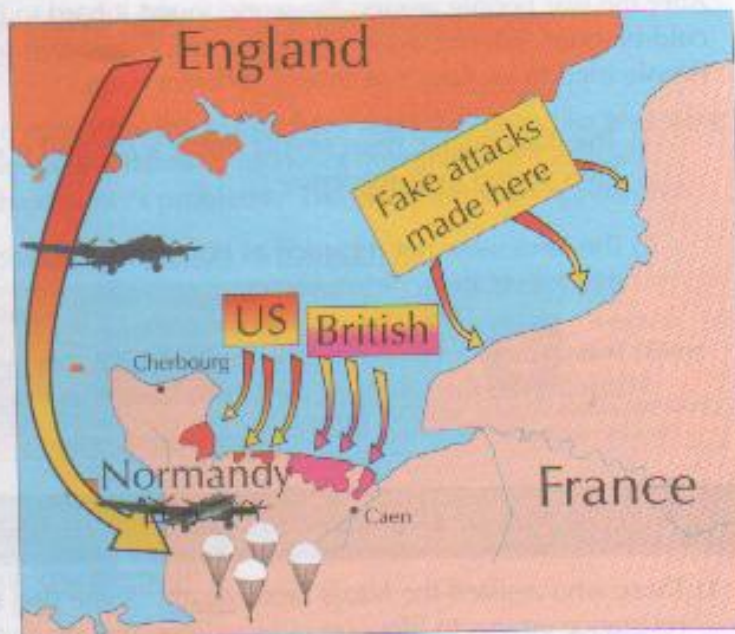
The Holocaust is perhaps the most harrowing subject you'll study

You need to understand the details of what happened in the holocaust, how it happened and how it fitted in with the rest of Hitler's actions and the war. Remember also the Jewish people's reaction to the persecution.

The End of the War in Europe

After 1942 German forces were *Retreating*

- 1) German forces were pushed back on the Russian Front.
- 2) Italian forces were defeated completely.
- 3) By spring 1944 the Allies were ready to attempt the battle to regain France.
- 4) D-Day landings were made on 6th June 1944. Preparations included portable harbours (mulberries) and a fuel pipeline (Pluto) laid across the Channel sea bed (to support landings by troops on 5 Normandy beaches — Utah, Omaha, Gold, Juno and Sword).



- 5) Paris was liberated on 25th August 1944.
- 6) The Germans counter-attacked in December in Belgium — 'The Battle of the Bulge'. They pushed the Allies back a few miles but failed to halt them.
- 7) The Allied advance continued and in April the Russians attacked Berlin from the East.
- 8) On 30th April 1945 Adolf Hitler committed suicide rather than be captured.

On 7th May Nazi Germany surrendered to the Allies
— V.E. DAY - 7th MAY
The war against Japan lasted until August 1945
— V.J. DAY - 15th AUGUST



The big push came in the summer of 1944

There's loads of stuff to learn here I'm afraid, but none of it's too tricky. Start by getting the chronology of the War straight in your head. After D-Day, the war was mostly one way traffic — the Germans were squeezed from both the East and the West simultaneously. There was no way back.

The End of the War in Europe

Reasons for the defeat of Germany



There are five key areas;

- FAILURE to defeat Britain in 1940.
- POOR WAR STRATEGY — especially on the 'Russian Front'.
- RESISTANCE to the Nazis in the Occupied Countries.
- THE US IMPACT on the War — in supplies and troops.
- The MASSIVE SIZE and INCREASING SKILL of the RUSSIAN ARMY who faced the bulk of the German forces for much of the war.

The turning point was 1942 — the year of three battles

MIDWAY in the Pacific, EL ALAMEIN in North Africa and STALINGRAD in the USSR. Make sure that you can explain thoroughly why these were so important.

Some key results of the Second World War

- Germany was divided into East and West — so was the capital, Berlin (see PP. 209-210).
- Europe was divided into the Communist Eastern Bloc and the Western Nations, with the "Iron Curtain" dividing them — a phrase coined by Winston Churchill.
- The League of Nations was replaced by the United Nations.
- The USA organised massive aid for Europe and Japan to rebuild — the Marshall Plan.
- In 1949 the Western nations formed NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organisation).
The USSR said this was a threat and formed the Warsaw Pact in 1955.
- Britain had massive debts — industry was out of date and overseas markets had been lost. Rationing continued until 1954. The new Labour government set up the Welfare State.

There's more about these results and how they led to the growth of the superpowers and the Cold War in section 10.

We'll meet again — don't know where, don't know when

Don't forget to go over the details of the end of the War in Europe, and the six main results of the Second World War — they're important in section Ten. What happened at the end of the Second World War had a major impact on international relations, and continues to affect politics today.

Revision Summary

And now it's time for your favourite bit — those revision questions. Remember — this is the best way to test whether you've really learned the stuff in this section. The main thing is to get the chronology of events clear. Then you can focus on the details. Keep working at these questions until you've got all the answers spot on. You'll need them all to get top marks.

- 1) What main technological developments made the Second War different to the First?
- 2) Which countries made up the Axis powers?
- 3) Which countries joined the Allies during the War?
- 4) Put these events into correct chronological order: D-Day landings / Attack on Pearl Harbor / Dunkirk evacuation / Atomic bombs used / German attack on Russia.
- 5) Make a list of key points to explain why Blitzkrieg was so successful.
- 6) What was the "Phoney" War?
- 7) Explain why Dunkirk and the Battle of Britain may be seen as key turning points of the War.
- 8) Why did Hitler decide to attack the USSR in June 1941?
- 9) Give some details about El Alamein and Stalingrad as turning points in the War.
- 10) List the main differences between how war was fought in the Desert, Russian Front and the Far East.
- 11) What happened at Pearl Harbor? Why may this attack not have been such a "surprise"?
- 12) Why were the Japanese so successful in their invasion of the Pacific and South East Asia?
- 13) Give arguments in favour of/against dropping the Atomic Bomb.
- 14) What part did the USA play in helping the Allied war effort before and after December 1941?
- 15) Why was Midway a turning point in the Pacific War?
- 16) Why were German forces retreating in 1942?
- 17) Make a simple sketch diagram to show how, and where the D-Day landings were made.
- 18) "The Russians could argue that they had suffered the most in the War."
Make a quick list of the ways in which Russia suffered.
- 19) Look at the five key reasons given for the defeat of Germany. Add notes to explain which were the most important.
- 20) Learn what the following terms mean — Iron Curtain, Marshall Plan, NATO, Warsaw Pact.
- 21) What similar problems did governments face in the First and Second World Wars?
- 22) Give the meanings of the following words and examples: occupation, collaboration, POW, resistance, internment, labour camp.
- 23) Explain why Jewish people were particularly hated and persecuted by the Nazis.
- 24) What was meant by the "Final Solution" and what were the results of this?
- 25) What major mistakes did Hitler make in wartime strategy?
- 26) List the main results of the war.

Britain in World War Two

The Government and civilians got ready for war

There were no celebrations in 1939 at the start of the war — people were too worried. The Government took emergency powers — as in the First World War. They had already begun preparing for air raids against civilians in 1938, and now took several new steps.

GAS MASKS

Gas masks were first handed out in 1938 — people were pretty sure there was a war on the way.



AIR RAID SHELTERS

The Government gave away about 3 million air raid shelters. Anderson shelters could be buried in the garden, and Morrison shelters were wire cages kept under the kitchen table. There were also public shelters in big towns. In London people used the Underground too.

EVACUATION

1 500 000 children, mothers and babies from industrial and built-up areas, were sent to live in the countryside — away from the danger of bombing raids. They were all moved within 3 days — 1, 2 and 3 September 1939.

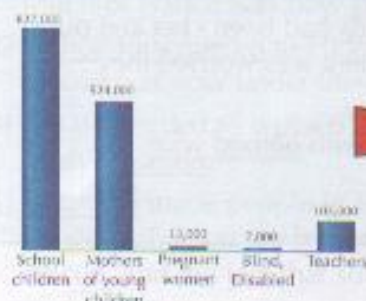
VOLUNTEERS

Volunteers could join the Air Raid Wardens or the Auxiliary Fire Service. They were trained in Air Raid Precautions. The ARP dealt with stuff like early warning of raids, getting people into shelters, putting out fires, and rescuing people from bombed houses.

Many children were evacuated from the cities

- 1) People feared the bombing power of the Germans — some of them remembered the last war and the Government knew that German bombers were now very advanced.
- 2) 1 ½ million people were evacuated between 1st-3rd September 1939 because the Government was worried about immediate bombing of industrial and built-up areas.
- 3) Most evacuees were children from poorer homes in the larger cities. Their lives changed completely because they moved to a new world in the country.

Evacuation was carried out in stages



Sent to Reception Centres. Mothers could go with children under 5. Foster parents took in older children and were paid an allowance.

Results

Good and bad experiences for evacuees depending on what your foster home was like. Some foster parents were shocked and saddened by the poor conditions many children were used to.

But remember Sept. 1939-May 1940 was the 'Phoney War'. The bombs didn't fall, so almost half the evacuees had returned home before the Blitz began. Many had to be evacuated again.

Being prepared — it helped Britain survive the Blitz

OK, some important facts here — you need to know how life changed in Britain as the country prepared for the bombing, especially evacuation and its effects.

The Outbreak of World War Two

While the Government at home tried to get Britain ready for war, the British Expeditionary Force waited in France...and waited. Poland had fallen quickly, but the Germans were waiting too.

Hitler invaded Poland — but then nothing happened

- 1) Hitler attacked Poland on 1 September 1939. Britain and France were Poland's allies. The invasion of Poland helped bring them into the war.
- 2) Hitler's invasion was fast and effective. The Polish army was brave and determined but didn't have much modern equipment — they had to send in cavalry to fight Hitler's tanks.
- 3) By the time Britain and France were ready for war it was too late to help Poland.

September 1939 to April 1940 is called the Phoney War. France and Britain were waiting for Hitler's next move — and he was waiting to see if they would make peace.

Germans, Italians and Austrians were put in camps

- 1) Anyone with a German, Austrian or Italian background was interned at the outbreak of war. That included a lot of Jewish refugees who had come to Britain to escape Hitler.
- 2) Internment means being put in prison camps. About 8000 people were held overall — including children. 5000 of them were sent to the Isle of Man.
- 3) Most people were allowed to go once their backgrounds had been checked out, but some were held all through the war. The Government was worried they might be spies.
- 4) The internees were held in ordinary houses fenced off with barbed wire and guarded by soldiers.

The Phoney War — six months of waiting and preparing

People were worried about air raids, and they were worried about spies. Not surprising really. Make sure you learn what happened to foreigners from enemy countries.

Fighting in Europe 1939-1940

The Phoney War ended in spring 1940

- 1) By spring 1940 it was obvious to Hitler that Britain and France weren't going to give up just yet.
- 2) In April Germany invaded Denmark and Norway. A British force failed to help the Norwegians hold the Germans back.
- 3) The British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain was forced to resign, and was replaced by Winston Churchill.
- 4) On May 10th German forces swept through Holland, Belgium and Luxembourg towards France.
- 5) French and British forces waiting for the German attack realised they would be cut off, and had to retreat. They were chased by the German army, fighting as they went. Finally they were trapped on the beaches at Dunkirk, waiting to be rescued.



British and French troops had to be evacuated from Dunkirk

A fleet of ships crossed the English Channel to rescue the troops. There were too many men, and not enough Navy ships to carry out the rescue, so civilian fishing boats and pleasure boats were used too. Between May 28th and June 6th 200 000 British and 140 000 French soldiers were evacuated from the beaches in Operation Dynamo.

These were the main results:

- 1) Most of the Army's equipment was left behind on the beach, so there was no way Britain could help France launch a counter-attack against Germany for the moment. Much of France was now conquered.
- 2) France surrendered to Hitler. Germany now controlled Europe. Britain was now under threat of invasion.
- 3) Britain needed to replace the men and arms lost at Dunkirk, and prepare for the likely invasion.
- 4) Churchill made people in Britain feel as though Dunkirk was a victory by concentrating on the bravery of the civilians who'd come to help with the rescue, and the fact that so many men escaped with their lives.

Operation Dynamo — a retreat, but still seen as a victory triumph

In April and June 1940 the Germans caught everyone by surprise. It's important to remember how quickly it all happened — and the main results of Dunkirk. Scribble a list and get it learnt pronto.

The Battle of Britain and the Blitz

Britain was fighting for its life in the summer of 1940 — the German forces were preparing to invade and only the Royal Air Force could stop them. The Battle of Britain was underway.

Hitler sent the Luftwaffe to clear the way for invasion

- 1) The German plan to invade Britain was called Operation Sealion.
- 2) The Germans needed control of the Channel to be able to bring troops across to Britain. But these troops would be easy targets for the RAF to attack. So the first part of Operation Sealion needed the Luftwaffe (German air-force) to destroy the RAF, by bombing all its airbases and destroying its planes.
- 3) The attack on the RAF began in August 1940.

The Luftwaffe failed in the Battle of Britain



By October 1940 the Battle of Britain was over. Here's why:

- 1) The RAF's pilots, though inexperienced, were highly trained, skilful and committed.
- 2) Fighter command was well organised and able to intercept German bombers successfully.
- 3) The RAF didn't commit all its planes at the same time — it would have been too risky. This meant they always kept some in reserve — with pilots working different shifts.
- 4) The RAF were fighting closer to their bases, so their fuel supplies lasted longer.
- 5) British factories were able to replace planes more quickly than the German ones were.
- 6) Britain had radar — a new and secret invention — to warn them of German air attacks.
- 7) By late September it was clear that the Luftwaffe hadn't destroyed the RAF.
- 8) Hitler decided to change tactics — just when the RAF were starting to weaken.
- 9) The Luftwaffe wasn't actually beaten, but the Government presented the Battle of Britain as a big victory.

The Blitz began in 1940 and went on till 1941

- 1) Hitler decided to postpone the invasion of Britain. It was now the only country actively fighting Germany. He hoped to force the British Government into making peace with a new tactic — the Blitz.
- 2) The Blitz was intense bombing of British cities. It was meant to break the morale of British civilians.
- 3) The main target cities were London, Birmingham, Bristol, Liverpool, Southampton, Sheffield, Cardiff, Hull, Plymouth, Belfast, Glasgow and Coventry. Each city had either factories, shipyards or naval bases.
- 4) People living in most other towns, and in the countryside were hardly affected by the Blitz.
- 5) At first the raids happened in daylight. But Germany lost so many bombers they had to bomb at night.
- 6) Radar and air raid sirens gave people warning of most raids so they had time to get into the shelters.
- 7) To keep people's hopes up, Government news films and press releases talked about the bravery and fighting spirit of the civilians. Reports were censored if they gave numbers or photographs of the dead.
- 8) Bombing carried on throughout the war, but the really heavy bombing of the Blitz ended in May 1941. Hitler realised Britain wasn't going to make peace, and needed the bombers for an invasion of the USSR.
- 9) During the war as a whole German bombing killed about 60 000 British civilians. But British and American bombing raids on Germany in 1944 and 1945 were much more severe. About 600 000 German civilians died, and 50 000 of them died in just one night during a raid on Dresden.
- 10) It's worth remembering that even in the worst of the Blitz normal life went on. People still worked, went to school, played football and got on with daily routine. The war didn't bring all ordinary life to a halt.

The Battle of Britain — a real victory... for propaganda

Hitler's reasons for starting the Battle of Britain are different from his reasons for starting the Blitz — make sure you understand exactly what each of them was intended to do. That's the key bit.

Safeguarding Britain's Food Supplies

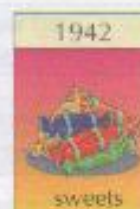
Britain needed a strong food supply from abroad to survive during the war, just as in the First World War. Hitler realised this, and U-boats were used to attack British food supply ships in the Atlantic.

German U-boats attacked British food supplies

- 1) One of Germany's strategies was to cut off Britain's food supplies to force a peace settlement.
- 2) U-boats (submarines) were used to sink ships bringing food into British ports.
- 3) Food supplies began to run short in Britain from the beginning of the war.

Food rationing started in January 1940

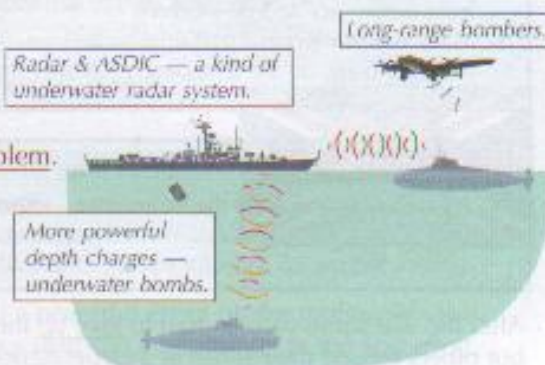
- 1) Rationing was introduced in January 1940 to make sure none of the really crucial stuff ran out.
- 2) The new Ministry of Food gave everyone a ration book.
- 3) Stamps in the book showed how much of each food a person was entitled to.
- 4) Rationing was brought in in stages.



- 5) The Ministry of Food published healthy recipes which used non-rationed foods. They were especially keen on people eating lots of vegetables and brown bread.
- 6) Pregnant women, babies and breastfeeding women were given special rations.
- 7) Some foods that weren't rationed were in short supply too — stuff like rice, peas, tomatoes, cereals, and almost anything made with sugar like syrup and treacle.
- 8) There were shortages of lots of other stuff — petrol, clothes, make up, crockery, and razor blades.
- 9) A lot of people grew their own vegetables in allotments — “digging for victory”.
- 10) Most people didn't like rationing, but they put up with it because they thought the system was fair.

By 1943 the U-boats were less of a threat

- 1) The worst year for the food supply ships was 1942.
- 2) The Navy began a convoy system to protect ships.
- 3) Techniques for finding and attacking submarines got better — have a look at the picture for some of them.
- 4) Britain and America got faster at building new ships.
- 5) As the U-boat threat diminished, so did the supply problem. But prices went up an enormous 50% between 1939-41 — talk about inflation!
- 6) Britain started to grow more food — less had to be imported.
- 7) The fight against the U-boats is called the Battle of the Atlantic.



The Ministry of Food — preaching healthy recipes

This is another page of 'whys'. Scribble down as many reasons as you can for why the U-boats attacked food supplies, why rationing started, and why U-boats were less of a problem by 1943.

Conscription & the Role of Women

It's pretty obvious how being called up would change a man's life — he would have to leave home, learn how to fight and probably be sent abroad. But many women got called up too in this war. They didn't tend to get sent abroad, but there were still some big changes to their lives.

Men and women got called up

Men aged 18–41 were called up to fight — unless they worked in vital industries like coal mining, steelworking, or building ships, planes or weapons.

From 1941 women could be called up if they were single and aged 20–30. They could be asked to join the Armed Services, work on farms with the Land Army or work in factories. They weren't actually allowed to fight in the Army, and mostly stayed in Britain.

There were about 450 000 women in the Armed Services, and about 4 500 000 men.

Loads of the people who weren't called up volunteered for war work. They worked as ambulance drivers, nurses, firemen and air raid wardens.

The Home Guard was a volunteer defence army for men in reserved occupations, or too old or too unfit to join the Army. They didn't even have proper weapons to start with.

Conscientious objectors didn't have to fight (though they helped in other ways e.g. as medical orderlies).

Millions more women went to work

In 1931 there were about 5 000 000 women in work. By 1941 there were more like 14 000 000 women at work, either in the Armed Services, the Land Army, doing war-related jobs in the factories, or just doing normal jobs. In almost all the jobs women only got a fraction of the pay men would have got for the same work. Like everyone else they had to work long hours — 50-hour weeks were quite normal.



FACTORY WORK

- 1) 7 000 000 women went to work, welding, making planes, guns and bombs, and sewing uniforms, barrage balloons, tents, and parachutes — all stuff that was vitally important to fighting the war.
- 2) Women often had to put up with a negative attitude from employers and co-workers.
- 3) Many women worked part-time so they could still run the house, do the shopping, look after the kids...

THE WOMEN'S VOLUNTARY SERVICE

- 1) 1 million women joined the Women's Voluntary Service.
- 2) They did a lot of work clearing up after bombing raids, and recruiting women volunteers for other war work.
- 3) They also darned soldiers' socks and made 1 million pies a week for farm workers.

THE LAND ARMY

- 1) 80 000 women joined the Women's Land Army.
- 2) The "Land Girls" went out to work on farms as part of the Government's drive to get more food grown in Britain, freeing up ships for transporting soldiers and arms.

After the war some women had to give up their jobs — some were happy about it, but others missed their sense of independence and freedom.

Women were called up to work

Most of this page is about how women got involved in the war, but don't forget they were far outnumbered by the 4 500 000 men in the forces. You need to know about the kind of jobs women did.

Censorship and Propaganda

The Government kept strict tabs on what information was getting through to civilians and people in the Armed Forces. Was it thought control or sensible security?

The Ministry of Information controlled the news



The Ministry of Information produced films, radio broadcasts, leaflets and posters telling a positive story, and encouraging a positive attitude.



The Ministry of Information was also in charge of giving people in Britain the official news on the war. They tended to ignore failures and report success.

The Government tried to cover up how many people were being killed by bombers in the Blitz (see P.190). News reports with pictures of the dead or casualty figures were censored. Most reports were jolly and encouraging — they concentrated on how bravely people were coping with the bombs, and the numbers of enemy planes that were shot down.

The story of Dunkirk told at the time was that hundreds of brave men in plucky little boats had gallantly saved the British and French soldiers. But most of the soldiers were evacuated by the Royal Navy — and the bloody and chaotic struggle to get to the boats was played down. The months after Dunkirk were particularly tough in Britain and the Government didn't want to lower people's morale.

Entertainment let people forget about the war

- 1) Entertainment wasn't going to win the war, but people needed something to give them a break from the grimness of life. The most popular entertainments were going to cinemas and dance halls.
- 2) There was entertainment for people in the Army, Navy and Air Force. Stars went out to perform for them. One of the most famous was a singer called Vera Lynn — the "Forces' sweetheart".
- 3) There was a special entertainment show on the British radio run by ENSA, the Entertainments National Service Association, also known as "Every Night Something Awful".

Churchill wanted people to feel they were "all in it together"

Winston Churchill became Prime Minister in 1940. He was a forceful personality and people found it easy to believe in him. He was brilliant at writing and delivering heroic speeches, which were broadcast on the BBC to stir up people's enthusiasm and determination to win the war.

Two of Churchill's most important ideas were that British people were "all in it together", and that this was a "total war".

"Total war" meant every person in the country was playing an active part in the war. It wasn't all down to the Government and the armed forces. Putting up with rationing or blackouts was a way for everyone to help.

The feeling that everyone was "in it together" had a powerful effect on the traditional class structure as everybody felt that they were making a valuable contribution to the war effort.



The propaganda machine — have a good look

The Blitz and Dunkirk are brilliant examples of how the Government controlled information to make terrible events into something to be proud of. You'll need to understand "total war" as well.

D-Day and the Defeat of Germany

By 1942 things were changing. The USSR and USA had entered the war in 1941. It took another 3 years for Germany to be completely defeated though. The important stuff to learn on this page is what happened on D-Day, and what changed in Britain because of the war.

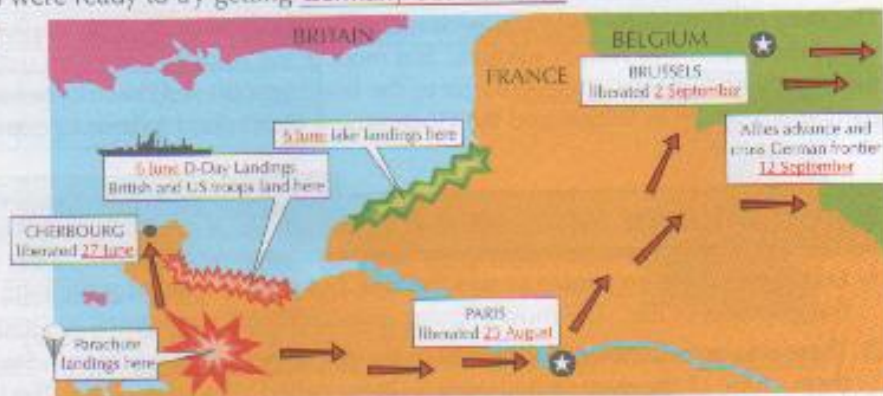
1942 was the turning point of the war

The entry of the USA into the war played a major part in turning the tide. But so did these three victories:

- 1) At El Alamein in North Africa, the British General Montgomery's "Desert Rats" defeated the German and Italian forces led by Rommel. Soon the enemy was pushed out of North Africa entirely.
- 2) By 1942 the Allies were winning the Battle of the Atlantic. More supplies could now get through.
- 3) The Soviet Army fought a large German army at Stalingrad. In February 1943 this German army surrendered.

The invasion of Europe was launched on D-day

- 1) In 1943 American and British forces invaded Italy. The Italians surrendered. This was the end of their alliance with Germany. The German army in Italy had to retreat northwards, but continued to fight.
- 2) By spring 1944 the Allies were ready to try getting Germany out of France.
- 3) Portable harbours called 'mulberries' were prepared for landing tanks and heavy guns. A fuel pipeline was laid across the Channel.
- 4) On 6th June 1944 the D-day landings began on beaches in Normandy. 326 000 soldiers were landed in the first week.
- 5) By 12th September the Army had reached the German frontier.
- 6) The Germans counter-attacked in December at the Battle of the Bulge. The Allies were pushed back a few miles through Belgium but only temporarily. This was Hitler's final gamble, but he refused to make peace.
- 7) The Allies kept on advancing towards Berlin. In the meantime the Soviet army was approaching from the East. In April 1945 the Russians captured Berlin, and the Germans surrendered on 7th May. The war in Europe was over.



What the end of the war meant for Britain...

- 1) Britain was in massive financial trouble. They owed their ally the USA millions of pounds. British industry was out of date. Overseas markets had been lost. It would take a long time for the British economy to recover. Rationing continued until 1954.
- 2) A new Labour government was elected in 1945. They began to set up the Welfare State. A lot of historians believe it was the bonding experience of the war that made this possible. Other people argue that these changes were coming anyway, and the war just delayed them.
- 3) About 600 000 people from Britain and the Commonwealth were killed in the war. But it could have been much worse if Britain had been invaded.

Who won the war? Some people argue it wasn't Britain

Learn the events of D-Day, and the push into Germany. Don't skip the bit about the effects of the war on Britain — despite winning, Britain emerged from the war much weaker in many ways.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) How did Britain prepare for air raids?
- 2) What was the 'Phoney' War?
- 3) Why did the RAF beat the Luftwaffe in the Battle of Britain? (Give at least 4 reasons)
- 4) What happened during the Blitz 1940-41?
- 5) What was rationing and why was it introduced?
- 6) What happened on D-Day?

Source A: David J Knowles, author of 'Escape from Catastrophe, 1940 Dunkirk,' reflections on events in May and June 1940.

"A miracle" — is the best description of what happened at Dunkirk in May and June 1940. Hundreds of thousands of troops were rescued from the jaws of the relentless German advance in the nick of time. The troops were desperately needed back on the home shores to help defend against being invaded ourselves. They were rescued from the harbour and beaches near to Dunkirk by a curious assembly of many different types of craft. Many of the little ships, such as motor yachts, fishing boats and all manner of other such craft, were privately owned.

Source B: Extract from Brian Horrock's autobiography 'A Full Life', 1960.

If you ask anybody what they remember most clearly about the retreat to Dunkirk they will all mention two things — shame and exhaustion. Shame — as we went back through those white-faced, silent crowds of Belgians, people who had vivid memories of a previous German occupation and whom we were now handing over to yet another. We had driven up so jauntily and now, like whipped dogs, we were scurrying back with our tails between our legs. But the infuriating part was that we hadn't been whipped. It was no fault of ours. I was one of the last British most of them were to see for four long years.



Source C: Photo of British soldiers captured by the Germans at Dunkirk, France in June 1940.

This photo was not published in Britain until after the war.



Source D: Recruiting poster for the Women's Land Army.

*We hear the valiant deeds of our men in
"furrin parts,"
Deeds which bring the tears to our eyes, a
glow of pride to our hearts—
But when the war is over and peace at last
restored,
I shall always remember the Land Girl,
who made her hoe her sword.*

Source E: Extract from a poem written in tribute to the Women's Land Army.

Exam Question

- 1** Study **Sources A to E** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) What was the 'miracle' described in **Source A**?
(3 marks)
- (b) Compare **Source A** with **Sources B and C**.
How and why do these sources differ in their interpretation of events at Dunkirk in May 1940?
(6 marks)
- (c) Dunkirk has been described as a propaganda victory but a military disaster. Do you agree? Use **Sources A, B and C** and **your own knowledge** to support your answer.
(8 marks)
- (d) According to **Sources D and E** how could women support the war effort? How truthful a picture do you think these two sources portray?
(4 marks)
- (e) Use **your own knowledge** to state what role women played in the war effort, other than the Women's Land Army?
(7 marks)
- (f) What role did propaganda and censorship play in boosting morale on the Home Front? Use **Sources A - E** and **your own knowledge**.
(12 marks)

Revision Summary

If you want to get decent marks for the Second World War you're going to have to learn everything in this section. Doing these revision summary questions is a really good start. Try answering them all. Scribble your answers down, so you can check back in the section and see if you were right. If you got any wrong you need to learn those facts again. When you can answer all the questions on this page without even thinking, then you really know your stuff.

- 1) When did Britain declare war on Germany? Give the exact date.
- 2) List 5 things that were done to prepare for the air raids.
- 3) Why were Germans, Austrians and Italians put in internment camps?
- 4) Why was the part of the war up until spring 1940 called the Phoney War?
- 5) Who became British Prime Minister after Neville Chamberlain?
- 6) When did France surrender to Hitler?
- 7) What was Operation Sealion?
- 8) List three advantages the RAF had over the Luftwaffe.
- 9) When did Hitler call off the Blitz? What did he want to do instead?
- 10) What's a U-boat?
- 11) Name five foods which were rationed during the war.
- 12) Give three reasons why U-boat attacks were less of a threat in 1943 than they were in 1940.
- 13) If you were a 40 year old man in 1941, working in a newsagents, was there a chance you might be called up?
- 14) How many men were there (roughly) in the Armed Services?
- 15) List three ways in which women contributed to the war effort.
- 16) What was the name of the government department in charge of spreading news and propaganda about the war?
- 17) What did ENSA stand for (officially)?
- 18) What did Churchill mean by "total war"?
- 19) Name the 3 really important battles in 1942, that changed everything.
- 20) What's a 'mulberry'?
- 21) How many soldiers were landed on the beaches in the first week of the Normandy landings?
- 22) When was Berlin captured?
- 23) What kind of government was elected just after the war?

Planning for the Future

There's a big link between the "all in this together chaps" attitude in the Second World War, and the moves towards a welfare state — that's what quite a few historians reckon anyway.

The war changed attitudes to welfare

The Liberal Government of 1906–15 gave a lot of Government help to poor people (see Section One). At the time many people in the Conservative party and some Liberals thought it was wrong for the Government to be so involved in people's lives. The debate between people who supported Government involvement and those who didn't never died out. After the Second World War there was a big swing in favour of giving more help.

- 1) Thousands of millions of pounds were spent on fighting the war. The attitude to spending changed — people felt that if a government could deal with the worst poverty by spending lots of money then that's what they should do.
- 2) In order to win the war, the National Government took control of health and social services, through policies like rationing food. They had to make sure people ate a healthy diet — and as a result health improved. Many people felt if the Government could do this in wartime, they should carry on in peacetime.
- 3) There were lots of Labour party politicians in the National Government during the war. They felt strongly about the suffering of the "hungry thirties" and wanted to make sure that Britain had seen the last of that kind of poverty.



- 4) Housing was already a problem before the Second World War. During the war, huge numbers of houses were bombed — and huge numbers of people were made homeless. The problem was now very bad — it would need some kind of drastic solution after the war.
- 5) Lots of middle-class people only realised how bad life was for poor people from the cities when they hosted evacuee kids. The children were dirty, their clothes were falling to bits, and they seemed underfed. Lots of them had never even had a bed of their own.

World War Two was a turning point for Welfare

Make sure you learn why the Second World War changed people's attitudes towards government spending and welfare. Then cover the page and write a mini essay on it.

Planning for the Future

The Beveridge Report — “From the cradle to the grave”

During the Second World War the Government set up a committee to look into British welfare and suggest how to improve it. William Beveridge, who had worked on some of the Liberal reforms of 1906–1914 (see P.29-35) wrote the final report, which was published in November 1942. Officially called “Social Insurance and Allied Services” it’s more usually known as The Beveridge Report.

- 1) The Beveridge Report sold 635 000 copies.
That’s a massive amount for a dry, serious government report.
It captured the public imagination.
- 2) Beveridge referred to the big problems facing poor people as the ‘Five Giants’: Want, Disease, Ignorance, Squalor and Idleness.
- 3) The Report said the Government should introduce more insurance schemes, more housing, child allowances, a national health service and a policy of full employment and secondary education for all. This would protect people from the Five Giants “from the cradle to the grave”.
- 4) Beveridge thought the scheme should replace all others.
It should be universal — for everybody, not just the poorest people.
- 5) He suggested everyone pay weekly contributions to a government-run insurance scheme — which would pay them benefit if they were out of work, sick or disabled.
There would be no more means testing.



Labour MPs were generally for the Beveridge Report and wanted to see it put into practice straightaway.
Conservative MPs including Churchill wanted to wait until after the war — and didn’t seem so enthusiastic.



The Beveridge Report — I’ll drink to that

Things were changing. Make sure you know what the Beveridge Report was about — what the five giants were and how they could be tackled. Don’t forget to learn the attitudes of the different parties.

Creating the Welfare State

A report isn't the same thing as actually sorting out the problems. It took time to get things done.

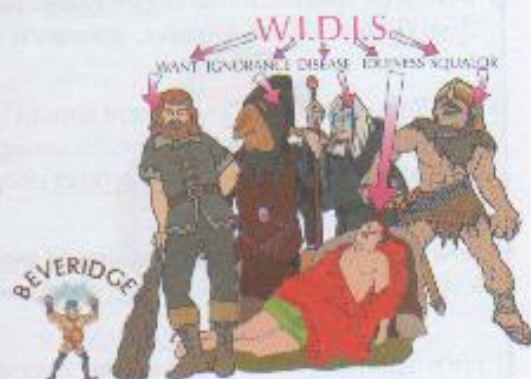
Two giants were tackled under Churchill...

Beveridge's Five Giants were Ignorance, Idleness, Want, Disease and Squalor. The National Government began the fight against the first two during the last years of the War.

It's odd to think the MPs in Westminster were debating the age of school leavers while war was raging on the Continent and all around the world.

Ignorance — The Education Act

- 1) The **Education Act** was passed in **1944**.
- 2) The politician behind the Education Act was R.A. Butler, President of the Board of Education. The Education Act is sometimes called the Butler Act.
- 3) Fees for state secondary schools were abolished, so everybody could afford to go. Primary schools were already free.
- 4) The school leaving age was raised from 14 to 15, starting from 1947. It was put up to 16 in 1973.
- 5) The Act said state primary and secondary schools would be run by Local Education Authorities (LEAs).
- 6) Everyone in their last year at primary school had to take a test called the 11+ to see what kind of secondary school they'd go to. Grammar schools were for the most academic kids. Technical schools were for those with good practical skills. Secondary moderns took everyone else.



Idleness — the aim was 'full employment'

Beveridge (again) wrote a White Paper on Employment Policy published in 1944. The Paper said that all governments should try to get full employment. 3% unemployment should be the absolute maximum.

White Paper = statement of what the Government hopes/plans to do

Unemployment did actually stay below 3% for about 20 years after the end of the war.

Two down, three to go

The Education Act is really important. Make sure you learn exactly what it meant for kids in Britain. The Act laid the foundations of the education system we all know and love today.

Creating the Welfare State

Labour won the General Election in 1945

At the end of the War in Europe, the Labour Party left the National Government and an election was called.

- 1) Voters only really trusted the Labour Party to put the Beveridge Report into practice.
- 2) Soldiers were particularly keen on a better life after the war, and lots of them voted Labour.
- 3) Despite Churchill's leadership during the war, many people remembered the Conservatives' failures during the 1930s. Churchill said Britain was too poor to set up a welfare state yet.
- 4) Labour won the General Election in 1945 with a massive majority of seats.
- 5) The new Prime Minister was Clement Attlee, who had been Deputy PM during the war.

The Labour Government set up the Welfare State...

Want — The National Insurance Act

- 1) The **National Insurance Act** was passed in **1946**. It extended Lloyd George's scheme from 1911 (PP. 32-33) to cover all working adults. Everyone in work paid a small amount of national insurance every week. Employers added a contribution, recorded on the employee's insurance cards. Everyone who had paid into the scheme could claim benefits when they were ill, unemployed, or retired (at 60 for women, 65 for men).
- 2) The National Insurance (Industrial Injuries) Act was passed in 1946 too. It paid special benefits to people injured at work, including disability benefit.
- 3) The National Assistance Act passed in 1948 set up the National Assistance Board. This helped people on really low incomes. The Public Assistance Committees that used to do this were scrapped. Even though National Assistance was only meant to be for the worst cases, more and more people applied. It was later called Supplementary Benefit.
- 4) Back in 1945, the National Government passed the Children's Allowances Act. All children after the first one got 5 shillings a week.

The Act also allowed for pensions for widows, funeral grants and maternity grants to be paid out of the National Insurance money.

Another page, another Act

This is a really important page too. The National Insurance Act was one of the corner stones of the Welfare State — it funded unemployment benefit, disability benefit and the state pension.

Creating the Welfare State

Disease — The National Health Service

- 1) The National Health Service gave free medical, dental, optical and hospital care to everyone.
- 2) The **laws** setting up the **National Health Service** were passed in **1946**.
The service began in 1948.
- 3) Almost all of Britain's hospitals were now in the Health Service, and run by 14 regional hospital boards.
- 4) Maternity care, health visitors and child welfare clinics were set up too, and run by local authorities.
- 5) The man in charge of these reforms was the Minister of Health, Aneurin Bevan.
- 6) The idea could have been scuppered before it got off the ground. Doctors, dentists and opticians used to charge their patients. Bevan first wanted them to be paid a salary — making them employees of the state. The British Medical Association kicked up a fuss about this. Bevan persuaded them to support the NHS by keeping doctors self-employed, but paying them a fee based on the number of patients they had.
- 7) Totally free treatment for everyone didn't last long — charges for glasses and false teeth were brought in in 1951, followed by prescription charges in 1952.
- 8) Overall the NHS massively improved the health of British people.

Squalor — new towns and new housing

There were two acts designed to ease the housing shortage.

The New Towns Act, 1946

Whole new towns could be planned and built by development corporations. The earliest ones were around London, designed to soak up some of the overflow: Stevenage, Harlow, and Welwyn Garden City.

The Town and Country Planning Act, 1947

The Act introduced the idea of carefully planning towns and villages in advance. All local authorities were expected to come up with a 20-year plan for land use. This led to far more council estates being built to provide cheap housing.

Britain menaced by five giants? — you're having me on

The stuff on these pages is really worth learning. Yes, I know it's a lot of boring Acts — but it's the sort of thing you can't do history without: FACTS. Scribble down the NHS stuff and learn it really well.

Nationalisation

The Welfare State was only part of the Labour Government's policy. They also brought in nationalisation. This economics stuff isn't easy, so don't feel gloomy if you don't get it first time.

Nationalisation is when the Government runs industry

In the 1930s, during the Depression (see Section Five — The Depression in Britain) people began to think that really serious unemployment and hardship could be reduced or even avoided if the Government planned the economy instead of leaving it to run itself.

Nationalisation was an important part of a planned economy. The Government would control the "means of production, distribution and exchange" — industry, transport and trade. This would allow them to make businesses more efficient, improve conditions for the workers, and invest money in big projects like road or house building to create new jobs for the unemployed.



The Labour Government nationalised some industries

After the Second World War the British economy was in poor shape.

- 1) Its industries were out dated and inefficient, and Britain's export trade had practically disappeared.
- 2) Britain owed over £3000 million in loans — mostly to the USA.

The new Labour Government needed to modernise industry quickly in order to rebuild trade, and to create jobs for the soldiers returning from the war. They decided to nationalise some industries. If the Government owned them, the profits would go to the Government — and would help to pay for the Welfare State. The first step was taken in 1946...

- The Bank of England was taken over by the Government. The Government could now make money available whenever they wanted to invest in industry.

The second step was to nationalise some of the biggest industries.

- Labour hoped that combining all the little mines, or power stations or bus companies into one national company would make them more efficient and even out prices and quality of service around the country.
- Each industry was run by a board of experts. The National Coal Board organised the coal industry. The British Transport Commission looked at ways of coordinating bus, train and boat services.

Nationalised Industries

1947	Coal
	Radio & telephone communications
	Air transport
1948	Public transport
	Electricity
1949	Gas
	Iron & steel

Labour's policies — successes or failures...

- 1) By 1950, Britain was recovering from the Second World War: exports were increasing, and there was full employment. The Welfare State had improved the standard of living for many people.
- 2) But rationing was still in place, and there was a housing shortage. Britain had also been drawn into the Korean War in 1950. In the 1951 General Election the Conservatives won and came back into power.
- 3) Nationalisation of inefficient and out-dated industries had been supported by all parties — but the Conservatives felt that Iron and Steel were profitable industries, and de-nationalised them in 1953.
- 4) Labour had created a "mixed economy" with some nationalisation, but not enough for many socialists.
- 5) Labour didn't have expert economic planners — they had no overall plan, and just dealt with specific problems when they came up. The Welfare State was expensive, and may have held the economy back.

Calm yourself — it's only economics

Nobody's expecting you to go on Newsnight and explain the pros and cons of a planned economy. The things to learn are why Labour tried nationalisation and which industries got nationalised.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List 3 reasons why there was more support for the Government setting up the Welfare State after World War II.
- 2) What were the '5 Giants' mentioned in the Beveridge Report?
- 3) What did the phrase "from the cradle to the grave" mean?
- 4) How were the benefits and services mentioned by the Beveridge report going to be paid for?
- 5) List 3 changes that came about in education as a result of the Butler report.
- 6) What was nationalisation and why did the Labour Government introduce it?

Source A: Extract from Tom Hopkinson, *'Of This Our Time'*, 1982.

[The Beveridge report was] a plan to establish full security for all British citizens 'from the cradle to the grave', and lay practical foundations for the post-war welfare state ... [Beveridge was] a skilful political manipulator [but his] urbane assurance of his own superiority, turning rapidly to irritation were he in any way challenged, alienated many of those whose backing he most needed. Indeed the hostility which his manner provoked might well have destroyed the effect of all his valuable work, but for extreme good fortune in the matter of timing.

Source B: Quoting James Griffiths, the Minister of National Insurance, talking about the National Insurance Act in 1948.

James Griffiths, the new Minister of National Insurance, claimed that it was "the best and cheapest insurance policy offered to the British people, of any people anywhere."



Source C:
David Low cartoon
published in 1950.



Source D:
Leslie Gilbert Illingworth cartoon
published in 1949.

Exam Question

- 1** Study **Sources A to E** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a)** Study **Source A**.

The Beveridge Report was published in 1942.
Why might this be considered to have given it,
'extreme good fortune in the matter of timing'?

(5 marks)

- (b)** Using **your own knowledge**, what was the National Insurance Act of 1948 mentioned in **Source B**?

(5 marks)

- (c)** Study **Sources B, C and D** and answer both parts of the question below:

- (i) What opinions of the Welfare State are given in **Sources C and D**?
(ii) **Source B** strongly disagrees with the view of **Source D**.
From looking at the authors of these sources how can the differences in opinion be explained?

(8 marks)

- (d)** The Beveridge Report identified problems facing poor people in Britain that were known as the 5 Giants. (These were Want, Disease, Ignorance, Squalor and Idleness).

How was each 'giant' tackled by government policies 1942-1950?

(10 marks)

- (e)** Did life improve for everyone due to the introduction of the Welfare State?

Use **the sources and your own knowledge** in your answer.

(12 marks)

Revision Summary

The Welfare State is one of those topics you've got to know inside out — why it happened, what it actually was, and how well it worked. If that sounds like a tall order, that's what these questions are for — making sure you know the facts. Work your way through them — then, if there's anything you haven't got clear in your mind, go back through the section and learn it. After that, yep, you've guessed it — have another go at the questions. You should be able to sail through the whole lot.

- 1) After the Second World War was the general mood in favour of welfare or against it?
- 2) What made lots of middle-class people realise how bad life was for poor people living in cities?
- 3) What was the name of the famous report about welfare improvements published in 1942?
- 4) What were the 'five giants' referred to in the report?
- 5) Who was most enthusiastic about the report — Labour politicians or Conservatives?
- 6) What was the school leaving age set by the Butler Education Act (1944)?
- 7) Who did the Education Act say should run state primary and secondary schools?
a) LEAs b) ELAs c) FELs
- 8) What percentage of unemployment did Beveridge say should be the absolute maximum?
- 9) How many people were out of work in the 20 years after the war?
- 10) Who won the 1945 General Election — Labour or the Conservatives?
- 11) Who was the new Prime Minister?
- 12) How did the National Insurance Act (1946) work?
a) Everyone paid a small amount each week, and employers added a contribution. All those who paid into the scheme could claim benefits when they were ill, unemployed or retired.
b) Everyone put half of their wages into a fund each week, and it was sent to the Government who used it to insure the nation against another war.
- 13) When the National Health Service started all treatments were free. What two types of treatment did people have to start paying for in 1951?
- 14) What did people have to start paying for in 1952?
- 15) How many regional hospital boards were there?
- 16) What year was the Town and Country Planning Act passed?
- 17) Name 2 new towns built in the 1940s.
- 18) What is nationalisation?
- 19) Give two reasons why Labour nationalised some industries after the Second World War.
- 20) Name two industries Labour nationalised between 1947 and 1949.
- 21) Give two reasons why Labour's policies could be seen as successes.
- 22) Give two reasons why Labour's policies could be seen as failures.

Planning the Post-War Future

Two main summits were held between the Big Three allies (Britain, America and the USSR) during 1945 to decide on the future of Germany and Eastern Europe — the Yalta conference and the Potsdam conference.

Three major decisions at Yalta, Feb 1945

- 1) Germany was to be split into four zones of occupation controlled by America, Britain, France and the USSR.
- 2) Free elections for new governments would be held in the countries in Eastern Europe that had been occupied by Germany.
- 3) The United Nations would replace the failed League of Nations.



But some difficult issues had already emerged

- 1) There was disagreement about the new boundaries of Poland. During the war, Churchill and Roosevelt had promised Stalin much of Eastern Poland, but by the end of the war, Britain and the USA were reluctant to give it to him. Stalin disregarded Yalta and did not allow free elections in Poland.
- 2) America refused to give the USSR the loans it had promised to help Russian reconstruction, unless Stalin allowed America to export goods to Soviet-controlled Eastern Europe.
- 3) Stalin wanted Germany to pay the USSR reparations for the war. Some reparations were agreed, but Stalin wanted the payments to be in the form of German coal. America wanted the coal to be used to rebuild Europe, and Russian demands were ignored.
- 4) The USSR began to ruthlessly exploit their zone of occupation. Germans in the Soviet zone were only allowed to sell their food and raw materials to the Soviet Union. Some German factories were even dismantled and moved to the USSR.

Before Potsdam the situation changed

- 1) President Roosevelt died and was succeeded by Harry Truman, who was very suspicious of Soviet motives in Europe.
- 2) Winston Churchill had been replaced as Prime Minister of Britain by Clement Attlee after Labour won the General Election.
- 3) Soviet territory had expanded three hundred miles westwards taking land from Finland, Lithuania, Latvia, Estonia, Czechoslovakia and Romania.

The allies were now suspicious of each other. Stalin wanted to control Eastern Europe so didn't want elections there — the USA and Britain objected to this. Truman and Attlee were new to their jobs — Stalin thought they'd be weak leaders and that he could take advantage of this to get his own way.

Agreements at Potsdam, August 1945

- 1) The new boundaries of Poland were agreed.
- 2) The allies decided to divide Germany and Berlin between them.
- 3) They agreed to legal trials at Nuremberg of Nazi leaders for war crimes.



Yalta and Potsdam — names to remember

It's vitally important that you learn about these summits, and the details of what was decided at each. Cooperation between East and West was still apparent, but so were potential problems like Berlin.

Increasing Tension between the USA and USSR

Three reasons for *tension* between the *USA* and *USSR*



1) Stalin was determined to force Communism onto Poland and other Eastern European countries.

2) The USA deliberately didn't tell the USSR about the development and plan to use the atom bomb on Japan.

This made the USSR suspicious of the USA.



3) Stalin wanted compensation from Germany for the damage done to the USSR in the war. Truman thought this would be a repeat of the mistakes made after the First World War.

The USA and USSR were now the major world superpowers — everyone else was much weaker after the war.

In a speech in the USA, Winston Churchill warned that there was now an **Iron Curtain** separating Eastern and Western Europe (see map).

The *USA* was worried about the *spread of communism*

In 1947, President Truman was determined to halt the spread of Communism in two main ways:

1) The *Truman Doctrine*

This promised that the USA would support any nation threatened by a Communist takeover — the USA and Britain had already ensured the failure of the Communists during the Greek Civil War in 1947.

Truman presented the doctrine as a contest between two sets of ideas — the USA was defending democracy against Communist takeover.



2) The *Marshall Plan*

In 1947, American aid was promised to European countries to help rebuild their damaged economies. Money was granted to European states so that they could buy food, raw materials and machinery from America. West Germany benefited massively.

Many in the West worried that poverty in Europe would drive people to support Communists. The Marshall plan was designed to ease poverty and so prevent the spread of Communism. (It also helped the US economy).

The *USA's* main concern became *stopping Communism*

The Allies grew increasingly suspicious of each other after the War. Scribble a paragraph on the main reasons for tension between the USA and USSR, and another on the US policies to stop Communism.

European Developments 1947-1949

In 1948 the **USSR** and the **West** disagreed over **Berlin**

Disagreements over the administration of the four zones of occupation of Berlin came to a head:



- 1) The Western allies — USA, Britain and France — agreed to a single government in their zones, and a new currency to help economic recovery.
- 2) The Soviet Union opposed these moves. Stalin wanted to keep Germany weak — so he decided to blockade Berlin.
- 3) Berlin was in Eastern Germany, which was controlled by the USSR — so Stalin ordered that all land communication between West Berlin and the outside world should be cut off.

West Berlin survived because of the **Berlin airlift**

- 1) Between June 1948 and May 1949, the only way of obtaining supplies from the outside world was by air.
- 2) By 1949, 8,000 tons of supplies were being flown into West Berlin each day.
- 3) In 1949, Stalin ended the blockade.



The blockade **hardened the division** between East and West

- 1) Two new states were formed — West Germany (German Federal Republic) and Communist East Germany (German Democratic Republic).
- 2) In 1949 the Western Powers formed NATO — the North Atlantic Treaty Organisation — this was a military alliance between 12 states, directed against the Communist threat. America was now committed to defending western Europe.
- 3) In response, the USSR and the Eastern Bloc formed the Warsaw Pact (a rival alliance) in 1955.

The tension between the **USA** and the **USSR** was called the **Cold War**

They called it the Cold War because there wasn't any fighting. Both sides were afraid of another war since the enemy now had atomic weapons — they didn't want to be wiped out. Instead the war was fought through arms races, spying and propaganda.

Two Germanies — with the **Iron Curtain** in between

Remember — the Cold War never led to any real fighting between the USA and USSR. Scribble a quick summary of the events of the Berlin blockade — how it began and why it failed.

Eastern Europe

Between 1947 and 1961, the USSR consolidated its control over Eastern Europe.

Young people left East Berlin for the West

Between 1949 and 1961, more than 2½ million people left East Germany for the West through East Berlin. Half of these were young people under the age of 24, and many were skilled labourers and professionals that the East German economy could not afford to lose. The Communist Government of East Germany was worried by this trend.

The Berlin Wall was built in 1961

On 13 August 1961, a 30-mile barrier was erected across the city of Berlin overnight, sealing off the Eastern sector from the West. The barrier was later replaced by a wall, fortified with barbed wire and machine gun posts. This meant that:

- 1) West Berliners were suddenly separated from relatives in the East — for the next 30 years.
- 2) No more people could leave East Berlin for the West — those who tried to escape were shot.



The USSR controlled Eastern Europe



- 1) By 1948, Poland, Hungary, Romania, Czechoslovakia, Albania and Bulgaria all had pro-Soviet Communist governments in control — effectively Stalin ruled Eastern Europe.
- 2) Yugoslavia also had a Communist government, led by Josip Tito — but it wasn't pro-Soviet, so Stalin opposed Tito's power.
- 3) In 1960 Albania also split with the Soviet Union.



The Iron Curtain hardened

A nice easy page here. The USSR wanted to consolidate its hold on Eastern Europe. Make sure you know why the Berlin Wall was erected, and what other countries the USSR controlled.

Eastern Europe

Things did not always run smoothly in the Soviet satellite states of Eastern Europe. At times there was unrest against Soviet rule, and the USSR was forced to intervene to suppress rebellion.

Uprisings followed Stalin's death in 1953

1) In May 1953, 100,000 workers in East Berlin demonstrated against Soviet rule, and went on general strike to demand better pay — but the demonstration was broken up by Soviet tanks.



2) In June 1956, Polish workers in Poznan went on strike. Russian troops broke it up — but the imprisoned ex-leader of Poland, Gomulka, was released and became leader again. He was allowed to develop Poland's Communist system in his own way — provided the country remained loyal to Russia.

3) Soviet policy seemed to be changing under new leader Nikita Khrushchev — he attacked Stalin and the Purges, blaming him for Kirov's murder (see P. 145).

Hungary was treated differently at first

1) In October 1956, the people of Budapest protested against the harsh government of Rakosi. The secret police, who'd executed or imprisoned thousands of Hungarians, were hunted down.

2) Khrushchev, the Soviet leader, allowed the liberal Nagy to become Hungarian Prime Minister.

3) Nagy announced that Hungary would withdraw from the Warsaw Pact and hold free elections — ending Communism there. He demanded that Soviet troops be withdrawn from Hungary.

At first, it seemed as though Soviet rule in Hungary had been ended.

However, Soviet tanks invaded Hungary

- 1) On November 4th, 200,000 Soviet troops and 4,000 tanks entered Budapest.
- 2) More than 20,000 Hungarians were killed or wounded.
- 3) Nagy was arrested and later shot.
- 4) A Pro-Soviet leader, Janos Kadar became Prime Minister, ensuring loyalty towards Russia.



Things got better — then worse again

OK there's lots of facts here — the key fact you need to remember is that even after Stalin's death, the USSR still wanted to keep control of Eastern Europe, even if they had to use force.

The Cold War in Asia

In 1949, the Communist State of China was set up by Mao Tse-Tung — this meant that the USA now became worried that China would spread Communism throughout East Asia. The Cold War spread to this area in 1950.



In 1950 war broke out in Korea

Communist North Korea went to war with South Korea in order to reunite the country — this was seen as a direct challenge from Communism to the West. The USA and the Western powers intervened on behalf of the United Nations to stop Communism spreading.

The UN aim was to resist Communist North Korean aggression



The UN ordered an immediate attack against the North Koreans.

- 1) UN forces (mainly American and British soldiers) landed at Inchon and drove the North Koreans back over the 38th parallel by September 1950.
- 2) President Truman allowed General MacArthur (UN commander) to invade North Korea in an attempt to push Communism out of the Korean peninsula altogether.
- 3) Truman didn't think China would get involved, but the American advance into North Korea worried China, who feared a Western invasion.
- 4) In November 1950, China launched an attack on the UN forces, driving them back and capturing Seoul (capital of South Korea) by February 1951.
- 5) MacArthur wanted to attack China but Truman disagreed — after arguing with the President, MacArthur was sacked.
- 6) Truman looked for peace, and a cease-fire was agreed in 1953.

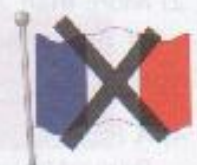
A Communist government in Vietnam 1954

Chinese support also helped to establish a Communist government in North Vietnam — that area of South East Asia had been controlled by France, but French forces were completely defeated at Dien Ben Phu by the North Vietnamese in 1954.

The Geneva Agreement of 1954



- 1) France withdrew from Indo China — they had lost their colony.
- 2) Vietnam was partitioned into Communist North and Democratic South.
- 3) Laos and Cambodia were set up as independent states (see map).



The Asian Cold War — got pretty hot really

There you are, the main events of the Korean War — but you just need the key points. The Korean War could easily have become a World War — make sure you know the main reasons why the UN invaded.

The Cuban Missile Crisis

The USA wanted to keep all countries close to its shores friendly.

Cuba was only 100 miles from the USA



- 1) Since 1940, Cuba had been ruled by a military dictator, Batista.
- 2) He allowed American businessmen and the Mafia to make huge profits in a country where most people lived in poverty.
- 3) In 1956, a rebel called Fidel Castro attempted to overthrow the government, but was defeated and forced into exile.
- 4) In 1959, Castro began a guerrilla war and soon marched into Cuba's capital, Havana — and successfully overthrew the government.

Castro wanted to get rid of American influence

- 1) He shut down the gambling casinos and the brothels.
- 2) He nationalised American owned sugar mills and oil refineries.
- 3) He seized \$1000 million worth of American property.
- 4) The USA cut off diplomatic relations with Cuba.
- 5) Castro began to work with the USSR — he'd always been Communist influenced.
- 6) The USSR offered to buy Cuba's sugar instead of the USA.



Cuban rebels in America plotted an invasion

- 1) In 1961, President Kennedy authorised an invasion of Cuba by CIA-trained anti-Castro Cuban exiles.
- 2) In April 1961, the rebels landed in the Bay of Pigs, but the US didn't give them air support as they had promised — so the rebels were easily defeated.
- 3) As a result of the invasion, Castro decided that Cuba needed Soviet military assistance.



Cuban revolutionary,
Che Guevara

Soviet nuclear missiles were shipped to Cuba



- 1) The USA's U2 spy planes flying high-altitude reconnaissance flights detected these Soviet missiles — from Cuba they could be used to attack US cities.
- 2) President Kennedy ordered a naval blockade of Cuba. All Soviet ships were to be stopped and searched to prevent further missiles being transported to Cuba.
- 3) Kennedy demanded that Khrushchev withdraw his missiles and prepared to invade Cuba. The Soviet ships steamed on to Cuba.

THE WORLD WAS ON THE BRINK OF NUCLEAR WAR...

At the last minute Khrushchev agreed to remove the missiles from Cuba and ordered his ships to turn around — if the US would promise to remove missiles from Turkey, near the Soviet border. Kennedy lifted the blockade and promised not to invade Cuba.

The Cuban Missile Crisis — a near miss

This crisis showed how big a problem nuclear weapons were — if one side fired, so would the other and everyone would die. Make sure you understand the Cuban Revolution and the Missile Crisis.

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List three decisions made at the Yalta Conference 1945.
- 2) List two reasons for tension between USA and USSR.
- 3) Briefly explain how the USA tried to prevent Europe from becoming Communist.
- 4) How did Stalin try to keep control of Eastern Europe before 1962?
- 5) Explain how Korea and Vietnam were seen as "direct challenges to the West".
- 6) Explain what is meant by "the world was on the brink of nuclear war" in relation to the Cuban Missile Crisis.

Source A: An extract from a speech made in September 1947, by a leading minister in the Soviet government.

"The ruling (group) of American imperialists ... has taken the path of outright expansion, of enslaving the weakened capitalist states of Europe and the colonial and dependent countries ... The clearest and most specific expression of the policy is provided by the Truman-Marshall Plans ... Imitating the Hitlerites, the new aggressors are using blackmail and extortion."

Source B: President Truman speaking on 12 March 1947, explaining his decision to help Greece.

"I believe that it must be the policy of the United States to support free peoples who are resisting attempted subjugation by armed minorities or by outside pressures ... The free peoples of the world look to us for support in maintaining those freedoms. If we falter in our leadership, we may endanger the peace of the world."



Source C:
Photograph showing coal
being unloaded from a plane
at Berlin airport 1948.

Source D: Historian Jack Watson writing in 1984.

"The Berlin air-lift was a considerable achievement but neither side gained anything from the confrontation. The USSR had not gained control of Berlin. The west had no guarantees that land communications would not be cut again. Above all, confrontation made both sides even more stubborn."

Exam Question

- 1 Study **Sources A to D** and then answer all parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) Explain what you can learn from **Source A** about the USSR's fears of American aims in Europe.
(5 marks)
- (b) Compare **Source A** and **Source B**.
Do they agree about why the USA got involved in Europe?
(6 marks)
- (c) How reliable is **Source A** as evidence about the Truman Doctrine and Marshall Plan?
Explain your answer using **Source A** and your own knowledge.
(7 marks)
- (d) **Sources C and D** give different views of the success of the Berlin airlift in 1948.
Why do you think these interpretations are so different?
Explain your answer using **Sources C and D** and your own knowledge.
(10 marks)
- (e) Use your own knowledge to explain what had caused the USA and the USSR to become rivals by May 1949.
(15 marks)

Revision Summary

Yes it's time for revision questions again — I know it's a pain but there's no way round it. It's the only way to test yourself on this stuff. So if you want to get the grades, you've really got to put the work in now. The most important thing to remember here is that the USA and USSR were the only countries who were strong enough to interfere in world affairs after the War — everybody else was too busy rebuilding their economies and industry. Make sure you can answer all of these questions — and if you have problems go back over the section until you've got the lot sorted.

- 1) Name the two Summits held by the Big Three in 1945 to decide on the future of Germany and Eastern Europe.
- 2) Which political leader was present at both of these summits?
- 3) What were the main conclusions reached at each of these summits?
- 4) By approximately how many miles west had Soviet territory increased in 1945?
- 5) Give two reasons why tension between the USA and Soviet Union had increased during 1945.
- 6) What phrase did Winston Churchill use to describe the separation of Western Europe from the East of Europe.
- 7) Who replaced Roosevelt as American President?
- 8) How did he propose to halt the spread of Communism in Europe?
- 9) Explain in detail how this would work.
- 10) Why did disagreements occur over the administration of Berlin in 1948?
- 11) What did the Soviets do in response to these disagreements?
- 12) What saved West Berlin from this?
- 13) Give the full official names of the two new states formed in Germany.
- 14) What does NATO stand for?
- 15) Which two Communist-ruled countries were not pro-Soviet by the 1960s?
- 16) Name the ruler of one of these countries.
- 17) In which year did Stalin die?
- 18) Who succeeded him?
- 19) Name the capital of Hungary.
- 20) What were the results of the Soviet invasion of Hungary?
- 21) Why was the Berlin wall built?
- 22) What were the consequences of this action?
- 23) Who became the leader of China in 1949?
- 24) Who was the UN commander during the Korean War?
- 25) Name the capital of South Korea.
- 26) Why was the UN commander in Korea sacked by President Truman?
- 27) Where was France defeated by the North Vietnamese in 1954?
- 28) What did the Geneva agreement of 1954 do?
- 29) Name the military dictator who was overthrown in Cuba in 1959?
- 30) Who became the new leader of Cuba?
- 31) How did he set about reducing American influence in Cuba?
- 32) Which country offered Cuba support?
- 33) Where did rebel troops attempt an invasion of Cuba?
- 34) Why did the world almost face a nuclear war in 1962?

Vietnam and the USA

During the Cold War, the USA was scared that many other countries might become Communist and help the USSR — they didn't want to be outnumbered.

The Domino Theory of Communism

The USA believed that if just one country was taken over by Communist leaders, then that would lead to nearby countries becoming Communist as well. For example, they were worried that Communist North Vietnam could cause South Vietnam to become Communist, and this in turn could lead to other neighbouring countries becoming Communist. This theory was called the 'domino theory' because if you knock over the first domino in a line, the rest fall over as well.



In 1963 President Johnson changed US policy

Lyndon Johnson became US President in 1963, after President Kennedy was assassinated. He was determined to keep South Vietnam Communist-free. He was more in favour of large-scale American military involvement in the conflict than Kennedy had been.

- 1) In August 1964, US ships in the Gulf of Tonkin were fired on by North Vietnamese patrol boats. In response, Congress passed the Tonkin Gulf Resolution which gave Johnson the power to take all necessary measures to achieve peace and security.
- 2) Johnson increased the number of American troops in South Vietnam from 23,000 in 1964 to 165,000 in 1965 and 500,000 in 1967.
- 3) In 1965, a US bombing campaign began against North Vietnam.

The Tet Offensive of 1968 turned US public opinion against the war

- 1) In 1968 the Vietcong (Communist rebels supported by North Vietnamese forces) launched a major attack which became known as 'The Tet Offensive'. They made huge, short-term gains — attacking and capturing many towns and villages in South Vietnam.
- 2) The offensive took the American troops by surprise, but they soon recovered — recapturing much of the territory that had been gained. However, it was a major embarrassment for the Americans and there were large numbers of casualties on both sides.
- 3) The Vietcong were greatly weakened. The regular North Vietnamese Army became the major force fighting on the Communist side.
- 4) Many Americans were increasingly concerned about the number of American casualties in Vietnam, and the amount of money being spent on the war. People saw footage of the War reported on TV with few restrictions and little censorship.
- 5) A massacre of Vietnamese civilians by American soldiers in the village of My Lai in 1968 gained a lot of publicity when it was investigated.
- 6) Public opinion started to turn against the war. In 1969, around 700,000 people protested against the war at a demonstration in Washington.



Images from the war were broadcast on American TV.

The US was determined to stop Communism — by force if necessary

The Vietnam War shows just how determined the US government was to stop Communism. Make sure you learn the domino theory — it helps explain why the Americans thought Vietnam was so important.

Vietnam and the USA

When President Nixon came to power in 1969, he realised he needed to take a different approach from Johnson to the Vietnam War.

President Nixon wanted to finish the war quickly

- 1) Nixon had a new strategy called 'Vietnamisation' which meant training South Vietnamese forces to fight the North Vietnamese Army (NVA) and Vietcong, instead of US troops. American troops were gradually withdrawn from Vietnam, and most had left by the end of 1972. (Although Nixon insisted on keeping at least 23,500 Americans in Vietnam until US prisoners of war were released.)
- 2) Heavy bombing of North Vietnam and Cambodia began again. This was an attempt to force a peace settlement. It was intended to destroy North Vietnamese supply lines — the main supply route was known as the Ho Chi Minh trail. US troops also attacked Vietcong bases in Cambodia.



President Nixon

- 3) There were peace negotiations with North Vietnam from 1969. Henry Kissinger, Nixon's National Security Advisor, was the USA's main negotiator. The chief negotiator for the North Vietnamese was Le Duc Tho.
- 4) Nixon also tried to persuade the USSR and China to put pressure on North Vietnam to end the war. This was possible because of a thawing in relations between the USA and the USSR (see page 219).

The USA was forced to withdraw completely

In January 1973, a ceasefire was arranged between Nixon, Le Duc Tho and the President of South Vietnam. But the war between North and South Vietnam continued and by 1975, Saigon had been captured by the Vietcong and NVA — the Americans had been unable to prevent South Vietnam falling.

The Americans were effectively defeated by the NVA and Vietcong for seven main reasons:



- 1) The Vietcong treated the South Vietnamese well and gained their support.
- 2) US bombing killed many civilians and made North Vietnam more determined to defeat America.
- 3) Vietcong guerillas were very skilful soldiers.
- 4) American troops were mostly poorly-motivated conscripts, unused to fighting in the jungle.
- 5) The North Vietnamese had the support of China and the Soviet Union.
- 6) American public opinion turned against the war.
- 7) The South Vietnamese regime was unpopular.

Vietnam — apocalypse then

The Vietnam War is a really complex topic. Try to get it clear in your head. The main reasons for US failure were the Vietcong being stronger than they expected, and public opinion turning against the war.

Confrontation and Détente

Détente was a period of increased cooperation between the USA and USSR, in the joint hope of preventing a confrontation that might lead to nuclear war.

The USA and USSR wanted to avoid another crisis

The Cuban missile crisis of 1962 brought the world to the brink of nuclear war. Both the USA and the USSR realised it was important that any further critical situations between the two countries should be avoided. This resulted in a relaxation (or 'détente') in relations between the two countries.

- 1) A permanent telephone 'hot-line', known as IWIK, was set up between the Kremlin and the White House.
- 2) The USSR and the USA signed a Nuclear Test Ban Treaty in 1963. This didn't prevent the countries from developing more nuclear weapons, but it did limit nuclear testing.



US-USSR relations improved in the 1970s

- 1) In 1973, the USA withdrew troops from Vietnam. Their involvement in Vietnam had been a failure and made the USA much more cautious about becoming involved in military conflicts which they could not easily win.
- 2) There was increasing rivalry between Communist China and the USSR, and by the late 1960s there was the possibility of war between them. This made it more important to the USSR to have good relations with the USA, the world's other major power.
- 3) In 1975, the Helsinki Agreement was signed. The USA, USSR, Canada and most European countries agreed to recognise the post-war European frontiers (including the division of Germany) and promised to respect human rights, e.g. freedom of speech.
- 4) As part of Cold War rivalry, an arms race had developed between the US and the USSR. By the 1970s there was growing concern about the development and testing of nuclear weapons. Nuclear testing was very expensive and could be seen as aggressive. The weapons which were being developed were getting increasingly powerful and more destructive — anti-nuclear movements protested against them in the West.
- 5) The arms race was very costly — both the USA and the USSR began to believe that the money could be spent on other things.

In 1970, the USA began talks with the USSR about limiting nuclear weapons. The Soviet leader Brezhnev visited Washington, and President Nixon visited Moscow twice. In 1972, the two superpowers agreed to limit their nuclear weapons when they signed the Strategic Arms Limitation Talks Agreement (SALT 1).

Talks continued throughout the 1970s with a view to further limitations but the USA refused to sign the proposed SALT 2 agreement in 1979, following the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan.

Détente — a chance for peace

This was a period in the Cold War when things ran more smoothly between the USA and USSR. Whether there was a real chance for peace however, is debatable. The USA and USSR were still major rivals, with very different political ideologies — capitalism in the USA and communism in the USSR.

The End of Détente

Unfortunately détente didn't continue into the 80s. Mistrust between the superpowers caused the arms race to restart.

The period of détente between the superpowers ended

There were several reasons for the increased tension between the superpowers:

- 1) In 1979, the USSR invaded Afghanistan to protect the pro-Soviet regime there from Muslim opposition forces called the Mujahideen. The USA saw this as a threat, and were worried that the USSR might gain control of the West's oil supplies in the Middle East. Therefore the USA secretly began supporting the Mujahideen with arms and money.
- 2) In 1979, the pro-Western Shah of Iran was overthrown and replaced with an Islamic government. The new regime was both anti-Western and anti-Communist. This worried both superpowers — Iran was important because of its oil resources.
- 3) President Carter failed to respond effectively when US diplomats were taken hostage in Iran. This helped to bring the right-wing, anti-Soviet President Ronald Reagan to power in 1981.
- 4) The arms race started again in earnest.
- 5) The US athletics team didn't go to the Moscow Olympics in 1980 in protest against the USSR's war in Afghanistan. In retaliation, the Soviet team boycotted the 1984 Los Angeles Games.

US President Ronald Reagan was very anti-Communist

- 1) Reagan was open in his dislike of the USSR, calling it the 'Evil Empire'.
- 2) He was supported by several Western European leaders (e.g. Margaret Thatcher) in taking a firm stance with the USSR.
- 3) He led an acceleration in the arms race — supporting an increase in US defence spending and the development of new weapons.
- 4) Reagan secretly got involved in South American politics in an attempt to suppress left-wing leaders and governments, e.g. supplying money and arms to rebels against the left-wing Sandinista government in Nicaragua.



Ronald Reagan

The arms race started again in the late 70s

- 1) In 1977, the USSR had begun replacing old missiles in its Eastern European satellite states, with more modern and destructive SS-20 nuclear missiles. The USA and Western European states saw this as a threat.
- 2) As a reaction to these Soviet missiles, President Jimmy Carter allowed more weapons development in the USA. NATO decided to station over 500 Cruise and Pershing missiles in Western Europe by 1983 as a deterrent to a Soviet attack.
- 3) By 1979, US Congress refused to ratify (make law) the SALT 2 agreement (which would have put more restrictions on the development of nuclear weapons).
- 4) Under President Reagan, the US started developing the multi-billion dollar Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI or 'Star Wars'). The object was to create a system which could use satellites and lasers to shoot down Soviet missiles from the sky before they reached their targets.

Relations began to heat up again in the Eighties

This page covers all the main features of the New Cold War in the Eighties. You need to learn them all. It wasn't just one side messing things up — both the US and the USSR contributed to the end of détente.

Eastern Europe and the USSR

During and after the 1960s some Eastern European countries rebelled against the Soviet Union.

Czechoslovakia rebelled against Communism in 1968

Alexander Dubcek became Czechoslovakian leader and made a series of changes to the country:

- 1) Workers were given a greater say in the running of their factories.
- 2) Travel to the West was made available for all.
- 3) Living standards were to be raised.
- 4) Free elections were to be held.
- 5) Opposition parties would be permitted.
- 6) The USSR decided to stop this — on 22nd August 1968, 500,000 Soviet troops invaded and Dubcek was removed from office. Soviet control was restored.
- 7) Soviet leader Leonid Brezhnev (Khrushchev had been removed in 1964) said he'd use force to crush any Eastern European uprisings.



Poland's people rebelled in 1980

- 1) In 1980, Lech Walesa led shipyard workers in the port of Gdansk in protest against the increase in food prices — with some success.
- 2) They set up their own independent trade union called 'Solidarity' and demanded the right to strike and to be consulted on all major decisions affecting their living and working conditions.



The Soviet Union didn't tolerate these revolts

In 1981 the Polish army leader General Jaruzelski, with Soviet support, seized control of the country with the following results:

- 1) Solidarity was completely banned.
- 2) Lech Walesa was arrested and imprisoned.
- 3) The price of basic foodstuffs was increased by 40%.

SOLIDARNOS'C'

So for nearly forty years, the Soviet Union retained control of Eastern Europe, although by 1980 there were signs of changes to come within the next ten years.

The Eastern Europeans — rebels with a cause

Remember, the Soviets had controlled Eastern Europe since World War II, so they weren't going to let it go easily. Make sure you know the details of the protests in Czechoslovakia and Poland.

The Soviet Withdrawal



In 1988, the Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev told the United Nations that the countries of Eastern Europe now had a choice — the USSR wasn't going to control them any more.

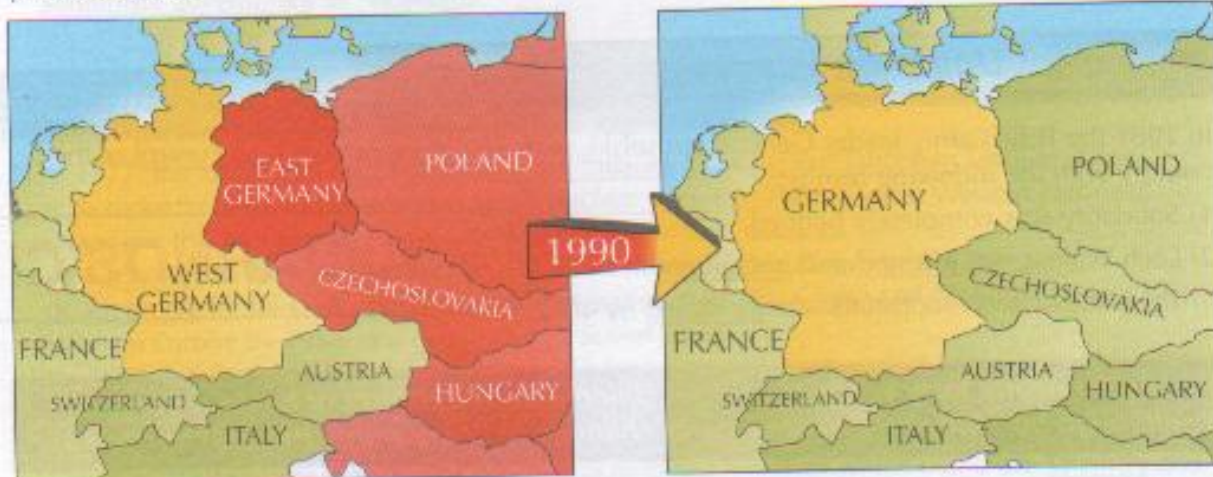
Communism fell all over Eastern Europe in 1989

- 1) Hungary opened its frontier with Austria in May.
- 2) Free elections were held in Poland in June. Solidarity won and a new non-Communist government came to power.
- 3) Many East Germans crossed into Hungary, through Austria and into West Germany.
- 4) The Berlin Wall was torn down in November.
- 5) Anti-Communist demonstrations took place in Czechoslovakia and the Communist government collapsed in December.
- 6) In December, a revolution began in Romania against the cruel and corrupt regime there, and the dictator Nikolai Ceaușescu was executed on Christmas Day.



Eastern European Communism ended

In 1990, Germany was reunified. Communist East Germany and democratic West Germany were one country again after 45 years. For many people, this was a powerful symbol that the Communist period was over.



Communism crumbled

There were six big changes in 1989 — and it's really important that you learn them all. Remember — the attitude and leadership of Mikhail Gorbachev is the key to understanding why the situation changed.

The End of the Soviet Union

By the 1980s the USSR was in crisis

- 1) The Russian economy was very weak. The government's economic policy hadn't changed to adapt to modern conditions. The quality of goods and services had fallen.
- 2) The arms race with the USA was very expensive and drained government finances.
- 3) Soviet farming was in trouble — there wasn't enough food and millions of tonnes of grain had to be imported from the USA.
- 4) The War in Afghanistan was a disaster — 15,000 Soviet troops were killed, and the war cost \$8 billion per year. It dragged on throughout the 1980s and seemed unwinnable.

Gorbachev introduced Glasnost and Perestroika

In 1985, Mikhail Gorbachev became General Secretary of the Communist Party. He was determined to revitalise the country and improve the economy. He was more open to the West than previous leaders and introduced two major new policies — Glasnost (openness), and Perestroika (economic restructuring).



Mikhail Gorbachev

Glasnost meant Openness and brought new freedoms

The Soviet people were given new rights:

- 1) Thousands of political prisoners were released including the leading dissident, Andrei Sakharov.
- 2) People were told about the atrocities committed by Stalin's government.
- 3) Free speech was allowed.
- 4) Military conscription was soon to be abolished.

Perestroika meant Economic Restructuring

- 1) Gorbachev wanted to make the Soviet system of central planning of production more efficient. The 'Law on State Enterprises' in 1987 removed the central planners' complete control over production quotas and trade.
- 2) Small-scale private enterprise and workers' cooperatives were to be allowed.
- 3) However, corruption in the Soviet economy was too great for all of his policies to be effective.

Gorbachev helped to end the Cold War

- 1) In 1987, a disarmament treaty was signed — the USA and the USSR agreed to remove medium-range nuclear missiles from Europe within three years.
- 2) In 1988, Gorbachev announced the immediate reduction of the weapons stockpile and the number of troops in the Soviet armed forces. Troops were withdrawn from Afghanistan in 1989.
- 3) In 1988, he declared that the USSR would no longer interfere in Eastern Europe.
- 4) The Cold War was at an end. In 1990, Gorbachev was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize.

Glasnost and Perestroika — more beautiful words to learn

The stress of trying to compete with America in the Cold War led to major problems in the USSR. Gorbachev responded to this by giving the people more freedom. Scribble notes on his two policies.

The End of the Soviet Union

Gorbachev's policies ran into trouble — they were too radical for some people and not radical enough for others. He also had to deal with dissent and calls for independence from the states within the Soviet Union.

Soviet republics demanded independence from the USSR

- 1) The USSR was a federal state of fifteen different republics — Russia being the largest.
- 2) Nationalists in some of the republics wanted independence from the USSR, and hoped that Gorbachev might be willing to grant them it.
- 3) But although Gorbachev was willing to give the republics some level of independence, he wanted them to stay within the USSR's overall control.
- 4) This conflict came to a head when Gorbachev visited Lithuania in 1990. Its leaders made it clear they wanted independence. He refused, but they declared independence despite this.
- 5) Throughout 1990, other Soviet republics such as Azerbaijan, Latvia, Estonia, Georgia and the Ukraine made similar demands for, and declarations of, independence.
- 6) Gorbachev tried to prevent the rise of nationalism in the Baltic republics with military force, e.g. sending troops to Lithuania and Azerbaijan, but gradually started to lose control.

An anti-Communist Russian President was elected

Boris Yeltsin was elected President of Russia (not of the USSR) in 1990. He was an opponent of Gorbachev and became popular and powerful. His ideas were very different from Gorbachev's:

- 1) Yeltsin was disillusioned with the Communist Party. He didn't believe it should have such a central part in the state.
- 2) He thought that the republics of the USSR should be allowed independence if they wanted it — that the union should be voluntary.
- 3) Yeltsin thought that the economy should be changed to a market economy — a major change from the state-controlled, Communist economy.

An attempted coup in 1991 failed

- 1) In August 1991, a small group of Communist Party members and military officers tried to take power by force. They held Gorbachev at his holiday home in the Crimea and sent troops into Moscow. Yeltsin rallied the Russian people to resist and the army supported him. The coup failed.
- 2) The coup had the result of showing the Communist Party in a very bad light, while at the same time increasing Yeltsin's popularity.
- 3) Gorbachev announced the end of the USSR, and resigned, in December 1991.

The end of Communism — the reds got the blues

Phew, there's even more stuff to learn here — but you've got to do it. By giving the USSR more freedom, Gorbachev allowed people to make up their own minds about Communism. In the end they didn't really want it any longer. Scribble a paragraph on why Communism fell in Russia, and why 1991 was so important. Then move on to one last lot of questions before the practice exam...

Warm-up Questions and Sources

Warm-up Questions

- 1) List three reasons why the USA and the USSR wanted to cooperate before 1979.
- 2) Briefly explain how the 'New Cold War' began.
- 3) List six reasons why America was forced to withdraw from Vietnam.
- 4) Briefly explain how the Soviet Union reacted to the rebellions in Czechoslovakia & Poland.
- 5) What were the main events of the fall of communism in 1989?
- 6) Why did the Cold War create a crisis in the USSR in the 1980s?

Source A: A speech made by Richard Nixon, Vice-President of the USA, in 1953.

If Indochina falls, Thailand is put in an almost impossible position. The same is true of Malaya with its rubber and tin. The same is true of Indonesia. If this whole part of South East Asia goes under Communist domination or Communist influence, Japan, who trades and must trade with this area in order to exist, must inevitably be oriented towards the Communist regime.

Source B: W. Baldwin, New York Times Magazine in 1965.

Vietnam is a nasty place to fight. But there are no neat and tidy battlefields in the struggle for freedom; there is no 'good' place to die. And it is far better to fight in Vietnam — on China's doorstep — than fight some years hence in Hawaii, on our own frontiers.



Source C: Members of 1st Marine Division carrying their wounded 1966.

Source D: Philip Caputo, a volunteer for the United States Marines, after hearing a speech by J.F. Kennedy.

Some men could not withstand the stress of guerrilla-fighting: the hair-trigger alertness constantly demanded of them, the feeling that the enemy was everywhere, the inability to distinguish civilians from combatants created emotional pressures which built to such a point that a trivial provocation could make these men explode with the blind destructiveness of a mortar shell...

Exam Question

- 1** Study **Sources A to D** and then answer **all** parts of Question 1.

Question 1

- (a) Explain what you can learn from **Source A** about the US fears of communism. (5 marks)
- (b) Compare **Source A** and **Source B**.
Are they agreeing about the effects of the Domino Theory? (6 marks)
- (c) How reliable is **Source A** as evidence of why America got involved in the Vietnam War?
Explain your answer using **Source A** and **your own knowledge**. (9 marks)
- (d) Study **Sources C and D** and use **your own knowledge** to answer the following question.
Do **Sources C and D** give an accurate view of the fighting in Vietnam? (10 marks)
- (e) Use **your own knowledge** to explain why America withdrew from Vietnam. (15 marks)

Revision Summary

There's just time for the best bit — some great revision questions to test you to the limit. There were loads of facts in this section, so you better make sure you've got them all in the bag. See how many you can answer first go, then look back over the areas you weren't so sure about. Just keep coming back to those questions — by the time you sit the Exam you should know them backwards. Good luck in the Exams.

- 1) Explain the Domino theory and how it applied to South Vietnam.
- 2) What two main changes did President Johnson bring about in Vietnam?
- 3) Who were the Vietcong?
- 4) Why did American public opinion turn against the Vietnam War?
- 5) What was the Ho Chi Minh trail?
- 6) Name the capital of South Vietnam.
- 7) Explain why the USA effectively lost the Vietnam War.
- 8) In which year did the Cuban Missile Crisis take place?
- 9) Describe two results of the Cuban Missile Crisis which were intended to prevent future misunderstandings between the Superpowers.
- 10) What does 'Détente' mean?
- 11) What does 'SALT' stand for?
- 12) Why did the USA refuse to sign the SALT 2 agreement?
- 13) What changes to USA foreign policy did Ronald Reagan bring about in 1980?
- 14) Who became the leader of Czechoslovakia in 1968?
- 15) What changes did he try to bring about?
- 16) How did the Soviet Union respond?
- 17) Who was the leader of the shipyard workers in Poland in 1980?
- 18) Name the trade union which the shipyard workers set up.
- 19) Give the name of the Polish army leader who came to power in 1981.
- 20) What happened as a result of him taking power?
- 21) What did Gorbachev announce to the United Nations in 1988?
- 22) Describe how Eastern European countries responded to this in 1989.
- 23) Who was executed on Christmas Day 1989?
- 24) Why was the Soviet Union in crisis in 1980?
- 25) Which country had the Soviet Union invaded in 1979?
- 26) Why was this war a disaster for the Soviet Union?
- 27) When was Mikhail Gorbachev appointed General Secretary of the Soviet Union?
- 28) What does glasnost mean?
- 29) How was this new Soviet policy to be implemented?
- 30) What does perestroika mean?
- 31) How was this new policy to be implemented?
- 32) Which of the two new policies was less successful and why?
- 33) Who became the President of Russia in 1990?

Practice Exam

Once you've been through all the questions in this book, you should feel pretty confident about the exam. As final preparation, here is a **practice exam** to really get you set for the real thing. It's split into **five sections** — you should answer one question from each section. The total time allowed for the whole paper is 3 hours, but it can be done as two papers each taking 1 hour 30 mins. The paper is designed to give you the best possible preparation for the differing question styles of the actual exams, whichever syllabus you're following. You'll only be able to work out a rough mark, but it should give you an idea of how your revision is going.

CGP Practice Exam Paper
GCSE History

General Certificate of Secondary Education

GCSE History

Paper 1

Centre name					
Centre number					
Candidate number					

Surname
Other names
Candidate signature

Total Time allowed: 3 hours

Sections A,B,C: 1 hour 30 mins

Sections D,E: 1 hour 30 mins

Instructions to candidates

- Write your name and other details in the spaces provided above.
- Answer **ONE** question from each section.
- You should answer a total of **5 questions**.

Information for candidates

- The marks available are given in brackets at the end of each question or part-question.
- Marks will not be deducted for incorrect answers.
- There are 15 questions in this paper. There are no blank pages.
- The maximum number of marks available for this paper is 125.
- You are reminded of the need for good English and clear presentation in your answers. All answers should be in continuous prose.
Quality of language will be assessed.

Advice to candidates

- Work steadily through the paper.
- Don't spend too long on one question.
- If you have time at the end, go back and read through your answers.

Core Element

Answer ONE question from section A and ONE question from section B.

Leave
blank

SECTION A

- 1
 - (a) In what ways did the Treaty of Versailles weaken Germany's armed forces? [4]
 - (b) Explain why the terms of the Treaty of Versailles caused so much bitterness in Germany. [6]
 - (c) How far did Clemenceau, Lloyd George and Wilson share the same aims in the peace negotiations of 1919? Explain your answer. [10]

- 2
 - (a) What were the main aims of the League of Nations when it was set up in 1920? [4]
 - (b) Explain why the League of Nations failed to deal successfully with the Japanese invasion of Manchuria in 1931. [6]
 - (c) How far was the League of Nations a complete failure? Explain your answer. [10]

- 3
 - (a) Describe the main events in Hungary in 1956. [4]
 - (b) Explain why the Soviet Union invaded Czechoslovakia in 1968. [6]
 - (c) How far was the collapse of communism in Eastern Europe due to the policies of Gorbachev? Explain your answer. [10]

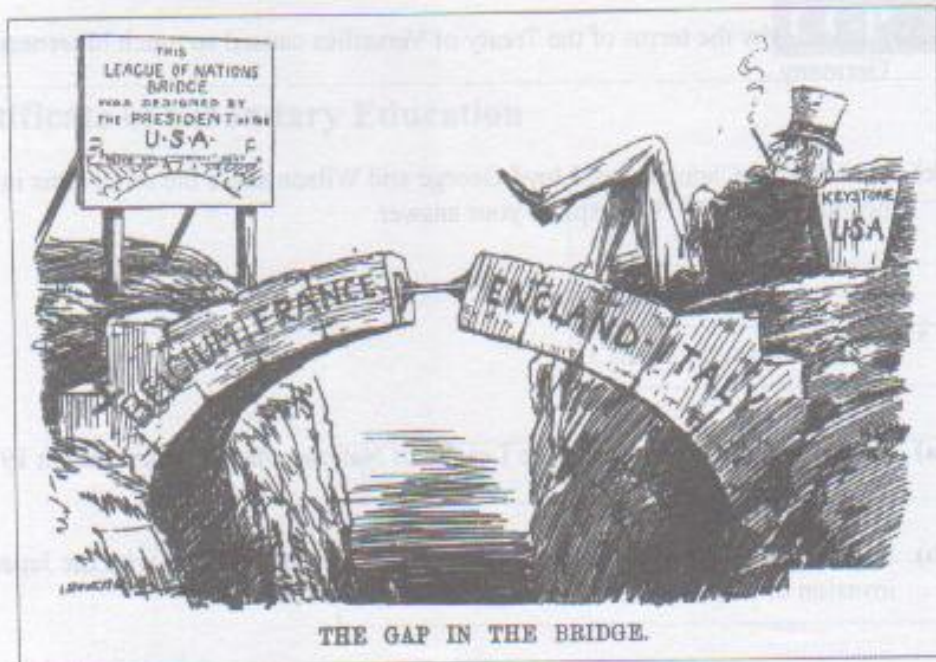
OCR Paper 1, June 2004

SECTION B

Answer ONE question from this section.

- 4 Study the source carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

SOURCE A



A British cartoon published in 1920. The figure in the top hat represents the USA.

- (a) Study Source A.

What is the message of this cartoon? Use details of the cartoon and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[6]

- (b) Explain why the League of Nations was established.

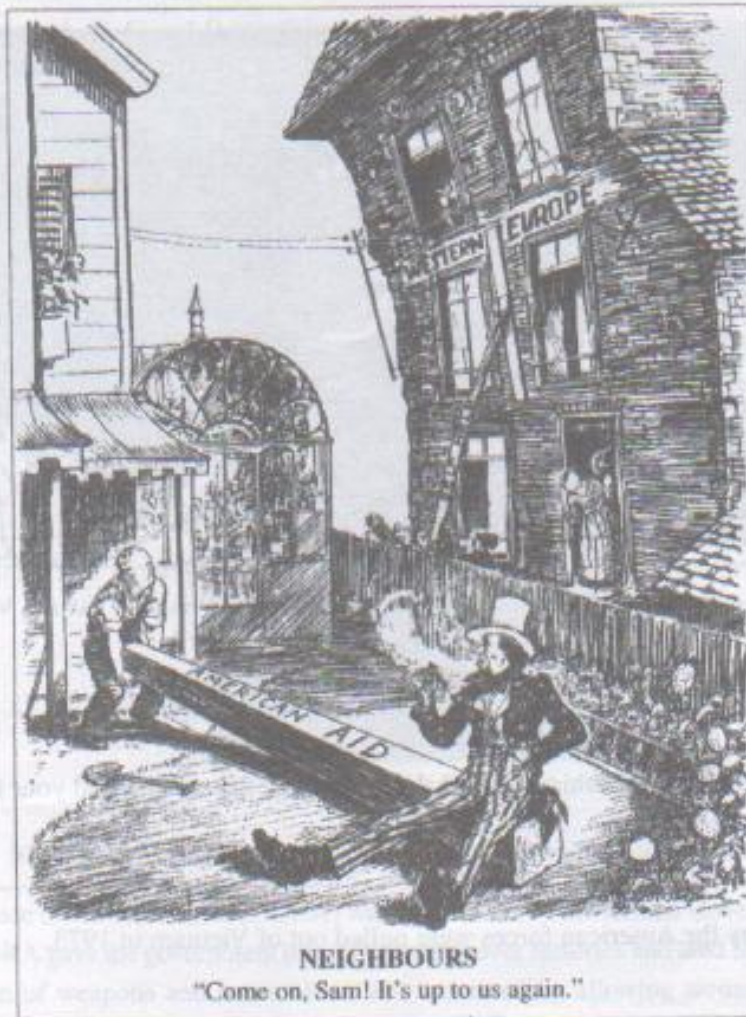
[9]

OCR Paper 1, June 2005

- 5 Study the source carefully, and then answer the questions which follow.

Leave
blank

SOURCE A



An American cartoon about the Marshall Plan, published in 1947.

- (a) Study Source A.

What is the message of this cartoon? Use details of the cartoon and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[6]

- (b) Explain why the Soviet Union blockaded West Berlin in 1948.

[9]

OCR Paper 1, June 2004

- 6 Study the source carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

SOURCE A



A British cartoon published in 1969. It is commenting on President Nixon's Vietnam policy.

- (a) Study Source A.

What is the message of this cartoon? Use details of the cartoon and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[6]

- (b) Explain why the American forces were pulled out of Vietnam in 1973.

[9]

OCR Paper 1, June 2005

Answer ONE question from section C.

SECTION C

Leave
blank

7 Britain in the First World War

Study Sources A, B, C and D carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

Source A British propaganda during the First World War



A military recruitment poster distributed in Britain during the First World War.

Source B Measures to increase the production of weapons during the First World War

The Defence of the Realm Act (DORA) was introduced by the British Government in August 1914. DORA gave the government the power to take over factories and land for war production. Production of weapons and ammunition was increased by allowing women to work in the munitions industry, and lengthening the hours of work. British summertime was introduced to allow more daylight for working.

From a textbook published in Britain in 2001

Source C Trench warfare during the First World War



A scene from an official British government film, *The Battle of the Somme*, released in August 1916

Source D The role of the British Expeditionary Force (BEF)

The efforts of the BEF in 1914 were the biggest contribution of Britain to the defeat of Germany in the First World War. The BEF prevented Germany from winning the war in 1914: they delayed the German advance in August 1914, giving the French army time to launch a counter-attack on the Germans in the Battle of the Marne. At Ypres in October and November 1914, the BEF resisted the German attack and saved the Channel Ports for the Allies.

From an article by a British army historian, written in 1969

- (a) **Source A** is a recruitment poster for the British army during the First World War. Describe how the poster tries to persuade the viewer to support the army. (3 marks)
- (b) Explain the effect the First World War had on the role of women in Britain, using **Source B** and your own knowledge to answer the question. (6 marks)
- (c) What are the limitations of **Source C** as a source of information about trench warfare? Use **Source C** and your own knowledge to answer the question. (8 marks)
- (d) Study **Source D**. To what extent do you think that this source is a biased view of events? Use **Source D** and your own knowledge to answer the question. (8 marks)

CGP, 2006

8 Britain in the Second World War

Study **Sources A, B, C and D** and then answer **all** parts of question 8 which follow.

Source A: The Home Guard practising drill in Kent in 1940



A photograph taken in 1940.

Source B: Damage in the centre of Canterbury in Kent after heavy bombing in 1940

A photograph taken in 1940.

Source C: Relations between evacuees and host families

At their destinations the evacuees gathered in village or school halls where they were chosen by the foster family they were to live with. Some were very happy, helping on farms and eating better than they had ever done.

From *Modern World History*, a school history textbook, published in 1999.

Source D: The importance of the Battle of Britain, 1940

The Battle of Britain started in July 1940. However, as British Fighter Command began to inflict heavier casualties on the German bombing squadrons, German hopes for air superiority began to fade. In the Battle of Britain, from July until the end of October, the Germans lost a total of 1733 aircraft and the British lost 915 fighters. It was a famous and a decisive victory. Britain had survived as a base from which attacks might later be made on the mainland of Europe.

From *Twentieth Century History* by Tony Howarth, published in 1979 as a textbook for use in British schools.

- (a) Study **Source A**. What impression does it give of Britain's state of readiness for a German invasion in 1940?

(3 marks)

- (b) How useful is **Source B** in assessing the damage caused by air raids in Britain during the Second World War?

Use **Source B** and your own knowledge to answer the question.

(8 marks)

- (c) How well were evacuees treated during the Second World War?

Use **Source C** and your own knowledge to answer this question.

(6 marks)

- (d) How important was the Battle of Britain in the later defeat of Germany in the Second World War?

Use **Source D** and your own knowledge to answer the question.

(8 marks)

Depth Studies

Answer **ONE** complete question from section D, and **ONE** complete question from section E. Your answer for section E must be on a different topic to your answer to section D.

(This may not be possible, depending on what options you've taken — we couldn't cover them all.)

SECTION D**9 Germany, 1919-1945**

Study the sources carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

SOURCE A

A Social Democrat poster published in 1931. It suggests what life will be like for women under the Nazis.

SOURCE B

The government has ordered that the Hitler Greeting is to be used in conversation between teachers and pupils. Every day at the beginning of the first lesson, the pupils will get up from their places as soon as the teacher enters the class, stand to attention and each raise their outstretched arm level with their eyes. The teacher will go to the front of the class and offer the same greeting accompanied by the words 'Heil Hitler!' The pupils will reply 'Heil Hitler!'

An extract from a German newspaper published in the mid-1930s.

SOURCE C

A photograph of a German family published in Germany in the late 1930s.

*Leave
blank*

9 (a) Study Source A.

Why do you think this poster was published in 1931? Use the source and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[6]

(b) Study Source B.

How far does this source prove that the Nazis had won the support of young Germans? Use the source and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[7]

(c) Study Source C.

Why would the Nazi government want to publish photographs like this? Use the source and your own knowledge to explain your answer.

[7]

OCR Paper 1, June 2005

10 Russia, 1905-1941

Study the sources carefully, and then answer the questions which follow.

SOURCE A



A photograph from 1930 of peasants looking at government posters showing a peasant on the left and a Kulak, shown as a pig, on the right.

SOURCE B

We have moved on to the policy of eliminating the Kulaks as a class. To launch an attack against the Kulaks means that we must prepare for it and then strike at the Kulaks, strike so hard as to prevent them from rising to their feet again.

From a speech by Stalin in December 1929.

SOURCE C



A photograph of the dead being collected during the famine of 1932.

10 (a) Study Source A.

Why did the government publish posters like these in 1930? Use the source and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[6]

(b) Study Source B.

How far does this source explain why some peasants opposed Stalin's policy of collectivisation? Use the source and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[7]

(c) Study Source C.

Does this photograph prove that the policy of collectivisation was a failure? Use the source and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[7]

OCR Paper 1, June 2004

11 The USA, 1919-1941

Study the sources carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

SOURCE A



A cartoon called 'The Downward Path' published in 1918 by the Anti-Saloon League.

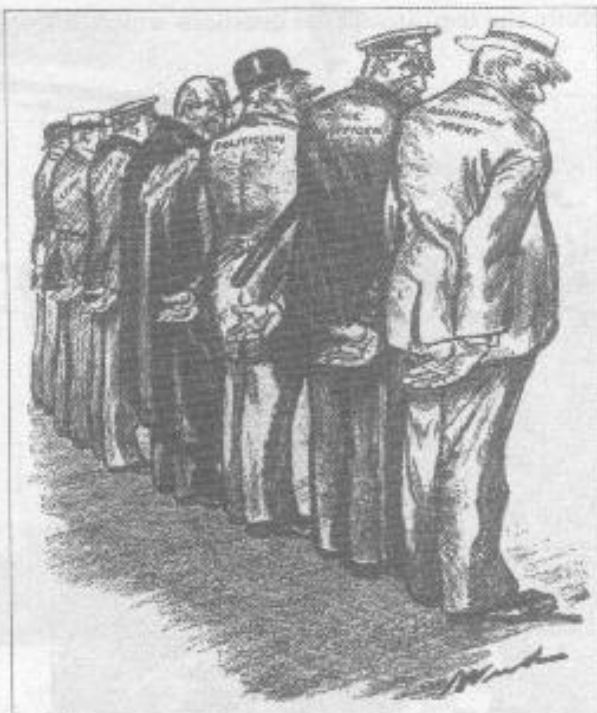
SOURCE B



A photograph of Federal prohibition agents in 1925. They are removing an illegal still.

Leave
blank

SOURCE C



A cartoon called 'The National Gesture', published in 1926 during Prohibition.

11 (a) Study Source A.

Why was this cartoon published? Use the source and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[6]

(b) Study Source B.

How far does this source show that prohibition was successfully enforced? Use the source and your knowledge to explain your answer.

[7]

(c) Study Source C.

How useful is this cartoon as evidence about why prohibition failed? Use the source and your own knowledge to explain your answer.

[7]

OCR Paper 1, June 2005

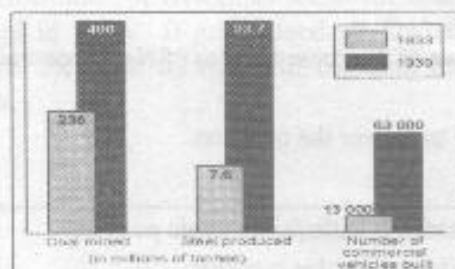
Answer ONE question from section E. If possible, answer on a different subject to your answer in section D.

241

SECTION E

- 12 **The German Economy 1933-1939 and the Creation of Hitler's Dictatorship**
Study Sources A to D and then answer all parts of the question which follow.

Source A: The growth of heavy industry in Germany, 1933-1939



The information is taken from a recent textbook written for use in British schools.

Source B: Employment in Hitler's Germany

I'm trained as a printer. In the summer of 1933 I lost my job. I collected the dole until the spring of 1934 but at least I was at home, with my family, and I could pick up some odd jobs, or I could work in the garden. That was a lot better than what I am doing now, which is Labour Service with ten days' holiday a year.

From comments in 1936 by a German man employed as a road worker on Labour Service.

Source C: The effects of Nazi economic policies

Real wages barely rose between 1933 and 1939, despite the shortage of workers. Rearmament did not provide enough resources for a large-scale war. It has been calculated that in 1939 the army had only six weeks' supply of ammunition. Strains on the German economy were created by trying to provide both guns and butter.

This produced an economic crisis in 1939. This in turn persuaded Hitler to go to war as a way out of the crisis.

From a book by a British historian, W. Simpson, published in 1991.

Source D: Men at work on a German motorway



This photograph was taken in 1935.

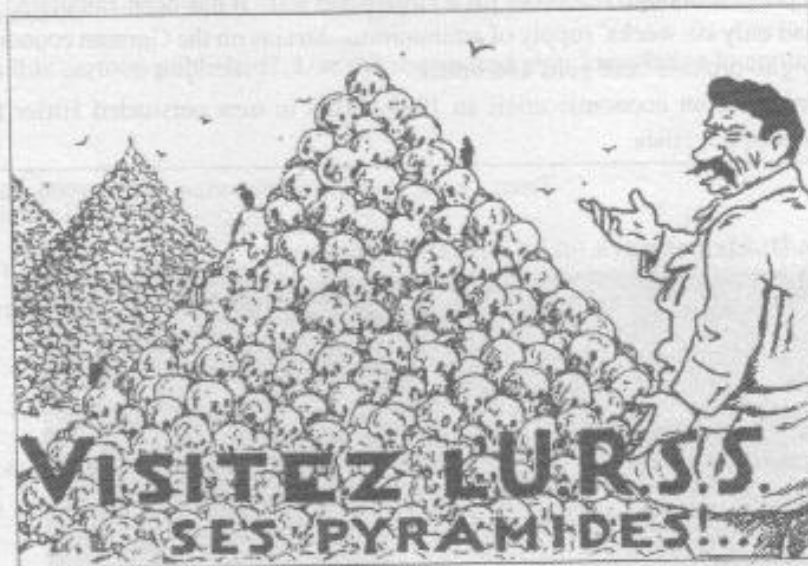
QUESTION 12 IS CONTINUED ON THE NEXT PAGE

- 12 (a) What can **Source A** tell us about Hitler's industrial policy in the years 1933-1939? (5 marks)
- (b) To what extent do **Sources A and B** agree about the effects of the economic policies introduced by Hitler between 1933 and 1939? (6 marks)
- (c) How accurate a picture does **Source C** give of the consequences of Nazi economic policies in the period 1933-1939?
Use **Source C and your own knowledge** to answer the question. (10 marks)
- (d) How useful is **Source D** to an historian studying Hitler's economic policies?
Use **Source D and your own knowledge** to answer this question. (9 marks)
- (e) How did Hitler raise himself to the position of dictator in Germany in 1933-1934?
Use **your own knowledge** to answer this question. (15 marks)

CGP, 2004

13 **Stalin and the USSR**

Study **Sources A to D** carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

Source A Purges in the 1930s in the USSR

A cartoon drawn in the form of a travel poster by a Russian living in Paris in the late 1930s.
The caption says: "Visit the pyramids of the USSR".

Source B Stalin

From the time he came to power, Stalin never really felt secure. Perhaps it was because his own rise to power had been underhand, or perhaps he feared the greater intelligence of those he had outwitted. Whatever the reason, it was in his interest to remove all opposition.

From *Russia and the USSR* by J. Foxon, 1997

Source C The new Constitution of the USSR

From a one-time economically backward country, Russia had been transformed into a mighty industrial state. The new Constitution, the Constitution of victorious socialism, was adopted in 1936. It guaranteed all Soviet citizens the right to vote and freedom of speech.



From *History of the Soviet Union in Artists' Drawings*, published by an official Soviet press agency in Moscow, 1974.

Source D Another view of the 1936 Constitution

In 1936 Stalin introduced a new constitution that appeared to give greater freedom and democracy to the Soviet people. In theory everyone was given the right to say or write anything.

In reality these rights did not exist. The ruling committee of the Communist Party, headed by Stalin and packed with his followers, continued to hold complete power. The right of individual citizens to express their own ideas without fear of punishment did not exist. Stalin had no intention of allowing anyone to criticise him.

From *Russia and the USSR, 1905-1991*, by P. INGRAM, 1997.

This was a textbook written for use in British schools.

(a) i) What view of Stalin is expressed by **Source A**?

(5 marks)

ii) The artist who drew the cartoon in **Source A** was a Russian living abroad in France in the 1930s. Using **your own knowledge** explain why it's unlikely **Source A** would have been created by an artist living in the USSR in the 1930s.

(4 marks)

(b) Why did Stalin fear that his position in power might be under threat, leading him to carry out purges? Use **Source B** and **your own knowledge** to explain your answer.

(9 marks)

(c) Explain why **Source C** might be biased. Use **Source C** and **your own knowledge**.

(6 marks)

(d) How do the views of the 1936 Constitution in the USSR differ in **Source C** and **Source D**?

(6 marks)

(e) Use **your own knowledge** to assess whether Stalin's policy of collectivisation of agriculture in the USSR in the 1920s and 1930s was successful.

(15 marks)

14 USA, 1919-1929

Leave
blank

Study Sources A to D carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

Source A The American stock market



"Say, Doctor, do me a favour. Just keep an eye on my Consolidated Can shares, and if they lose value tell my broker to sell and get four thousand shares of P & Q Rails. Thanks."

A cartoon from *New York Magazine* in 1927.

This cartoon shows a man in hospital about to have an operation but still worrying about his financial investments.

Source B Changes in American society in the 1920s

There was never a time in American history when youth had such a special sense of importance as in the years after the First World War. There was a gulf between the generations. Young men who had fought in the trenches felt that they knew a reality their elders could not even imagine. Younger girls no longer consciously modelled themselves on their mothers, whose attitudes seemed irrelevant in the 1920s.

From *The Perils of Prosperity* by W. E. LEUCHTENBERG, 1958

This book was written for use by students of American history.

Source C An alternative view of American society in the 1920s

Though a few young upper middle-class women in the cities talked about throwing off the older conventions — they were the flappers — most women stuck to more traditional attitudes concerning "their place". Most concentrated on managing the home. Their daughters were likely to prepare for careers as mothers and housewives. Millions of immigrant women and their daughters also clung to traditions that placed men firmly in control of the family.

From *America in the Twentieth Century, A History* 5th Edition by PATTERSON, 2000. Reprinted with permission of Wadsworth, a division of Thomson Learning: www.thomsonrights.com.

Fax 800 730-2215. This book was written for use by students of American history.

Source D Attitudes towards immigration in the USA in the 1920s

For some years in the early twentieth century white Anglo-Saxon Protestant Americans had been feeling "swamped" by non-Protestant immigrants with darker skins than their own, especially Catholics and Jews from Europe.

An immigration law of 1921 established a national quota system, designed so that few people from eastern and southern Europe could get in.

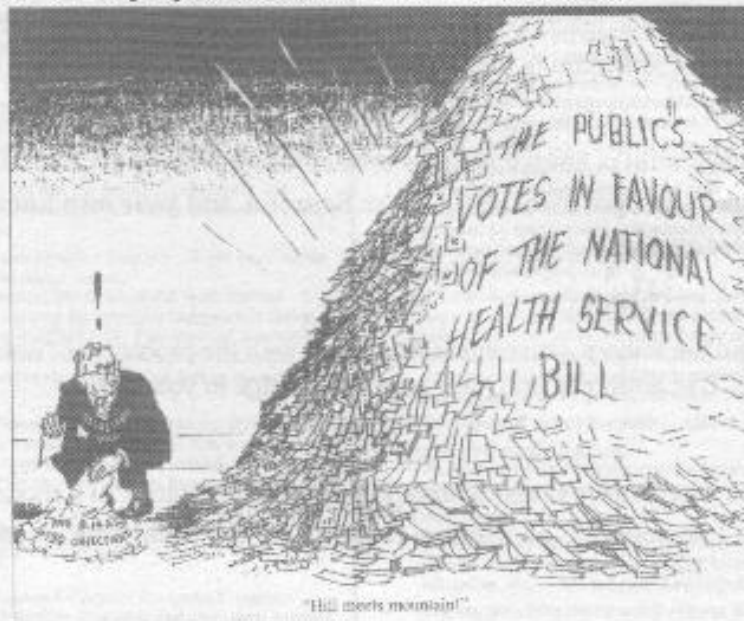
From *The USA, from Wilson to Nixon* by H. WARD, 1996

- (a) What are the limitations of **Source A** as a source of information about attitudes to the stock market in America in the 1920s? (5 marks)
- (b) How does the view of American women in the 1920s differ in **Source B** from **Source C**? (6 marks)
- (c) How far is **Source B** an accurate description of social changes in America after the First World War? Use **Source B** and **your own knowledge** to explain your answer. (9 marks)
- (d) How tolerant a society was the USA in the 1920s? Use **Source D** and **your own knowledge** in your answer. (10 marks)
- (e) Using **your own knowledge** assess the reasons which contributed to the USA pursuing a policy of 'isolationism' in the period following the First World War. (15 marks)

CGP, 2006

15 Britain, 1929–1951

Study **Sources A** to **D** carefully and then answer the questions which follow.

Source A Reactions to proposals for a National Health Service

A cartoon in the *Daily Mirror*, May 1946. Hill was Secretary of the British Medical Association (BMA).

Source B Family allowances introduced

To improve the standard of living, the idea of a family allowance was introduced in 1945 and the first payments were made in August 1946. A family received five shillings (25p) a week for each child after the first until each child reached the age of sixteen or was employed full-time. There was no means test — all families received the benefit.

From a history text book, 2003

Source C The Labour Government's policy of nationalisation

There was not much real opposition to our nationalisation policy. It was realised by all political parties that the problem of the coal industry had been shockingly mishandled in the past, and that if men were to be got to work in the pits a new start was necessary. Electricity and gas had already to a large extent passed into public ownership. Of all our nationalisation proposals, only iron and steel roused much feeling, perhaps because hopes of profit were greater here than elsewhere.

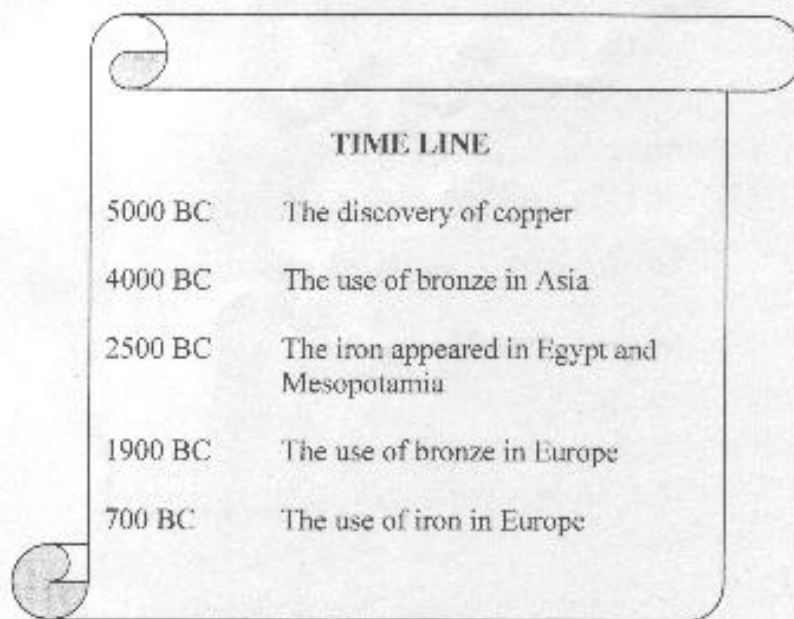
From *As It Happened* — an autobiography by CLEMENT ATTLEE, 1954
Clement Attlee was Labour Prime Minister in the years 1945 to 1951.

Source D Conservative plans in the early 1950s

We had a heavy load of promises. We had said we would "set the people free". The Churchill Government (1951-1955) pledged in its election manifesto to undo much of the nationalisation of industries carried out by Labour governments in the previous six years.

From *Memoirs* by the EARL OF WOOLTON, 1959.
He had been a leading Conservative politician in the 1940s and 1950s.

- (a) (i) Describe the reactions shown in **Source A** to the idea of a National Health Service in Britain in the 1940s. (4 marks)
- ii) How useful is **Source A** as a source of information about reactions to the National Health Service in the 1940s? Use **Source A** and **your own knowledge** to explain your answer. (6 marks)
- (b) How did the Labour government try to deal with the problem of "want" in the late 1940s? Use **Source B** and **your own knowledge** in your answer. (10 marks)
- (c) Suggest why **Source C** and **Source D** show different views of Labour's nationalisation policy. Use **Source C** and **Source D** and **your own knowledge** in your answer. (10 marks)
- (d) Some historians argue that the 1929 Wall Street Crash was the main cause of the Depression in Britain in the 1930s. How far do you agree with this opinion? Use **your own knowledge** to explain your answer. (15 marks)



TIME LINE	
5000 BC	The discovery of copper
4000 BC	The use of bronze in Asia
2500 BC	The iron appeared in Egypt and Mesopotamia
1900 BC	The use of bronze in Europe
700 BC	The use of iron in Europe

9. Test yourself

1. When was the metal discovered?
2. How was the metal discovered?
3. When did people start to use bronze in Europe?
4. When did people start to use iron in Europe?
5. How did the use of metal change the structure of the society?
6. Why were the iron weapons better than bronze weapons?